StepAhead Series

Together to a bright future

# CONNECT PLUS 6

## First Term





# Content

Part 1

# General Revision on Connect Plus (5)

## Revision on Structures

### The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط



| Affirmative الإثبات | Negative النفي | Interrogative الاستفهام |
|---|---|---|
| I / He / She / It / You / We / They → played | I / He / She / It / You / We / They → did not play ↕ didn't play | Did → I play ............... ? / he play ............ ? / she play .......... ? / it play ............... ? / you play .......... ? / we play ............ ? / they play ......... ? |

### The Present Perfect Tense زمن المضارع التام



| Affirmative الإثبات | Negative النفي | Interrogative الاستفهام |
|---|---|---|
| I → have finished | I → haven't finished | Have → I finished .....? |
| He / She / It → has finished | He / She / It → hasn't finished | Has → he finished .....? / she finished ....? / it finished .......? |
| You / We / They → have finished | You / We / They → haven't finished | Have → you finished ..? / we finished .....? / they finished..? |

## Revision

### 1 Choose the correct answer:

1. We (have - has - are) eaten dinner.
2. (Did - Have - Has) she make a cake?
3. Mom (has - have - is) already cooked the food.
4. My sister (have make - has made - make) us delicious food.
5. (Have - Has - Do) you finished your work?
6. He hasn't (seen - saw - see) his grandfather for months.
7. Nour (have - has - is) cooked pasta and meatballs.
8. My friend Omar (played - have played - playing) for a football club last year.
9. Did Ali (clean - cleaning - cleaned) his room?
10. (Have - Has - Did) Sara do her homework last night?
11. Ahmed didn't (go - went - gone) to school yesterday.
12. Has Amir (ever - just - since) gone to Alexandria?
13. We (didn't - aren't - haven't) watch the match yesterday.
14. Have you (ever - never - yet) seen an elephant?
15. We have (start - started - starts) our new game.
16. They (starts - started - has started) their class two hours ago.
17. I (go - went - have gone) to bed at ten last night.
18. They (haven't - hasn't - didn't) painted the pictures yet.
19. They (eaten - ate - have eaten) their lunch an hour ago.
20. Sara and Ahmed (have - has - are) listened carefully to their teacher.

### 2 Complete with the correct form of the verbs in brackets:

1. What has he .............................. (do) in the classroom?
2. What did you .............................. (do) last week?
3. Have you ever .............................. (travel) abroad?
4. He has just.............................. (go) out.
5. We .............................. (visit) our grandparents last Friday.
6. Ali has .............................. (make) a big mistake.
7. I .............................. (not see) the accident yesterday.
8. They have already .............................. (eat) fish for lunch.
9. I .............................. (buy) a new mobile last month.
10. She has .............................. (give) me a present.





## who- which -where

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Who** | الذي- التي- الذين- اللائي | ▶▶▶ used for people |
| **Which** | الذي- التي- الذين- اللائي | ▶▶▶ used for things |
| **Where** | حيث | ▶▶▶ used for places |

- This is the man **who** bought the villa.
- Did you see the car **which** my father bought?
- Cairo is the city **where** my cousins live.

## 3 Choose the correct answer:

1. Do you remember my uncle Adel (who - where - which) lives in Alexandria?
2. This is an elephant (who - where - which) lives in African forests.
3. I have another aunt (who - which - where) lives in New York.
4. These are the boys (who - which - where) won the match.
5. This is a medicine (who - where - which) is good for ill people.
6. July is a month (which - where - who) is often hot.
7. This is Sara (who - where - which) lives in Aswan.
8. This is the Egyptian desert, (who - which - where) lizards and other animals live.
9. This is my sister (where - which - who) is very good at tennis.
10. Do you know the village (where - who - which) my grandparents live?
11. Heba is a girl (who - where - which) wants to be a doctor.
12. A wadi is an ecosystem (where - which - who) is normally dry.

## If Conditionals

### The Zero Conditional (If)

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *If + present simple* |  | *present simple* |
| If + مضارع بسيط |  | مضارع بسيط |

- **If** you **boil** water, it **turns** into steam.

## The First Conditional (If)

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *If + present simple* | ▶▶▶ | *future simple / (or imperative)* |
| *If +* مضـــارع بسيط | ▶▶▶ | *will ('ll – won't) +* المصدر/ (أو صيغة الأمر) |

▶ If you study hard, you 'll get high marks.

## The Second Conditional (If)

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *If + past simple* | ▶▶▶ | *would ('d) + stem verb* |
| *If +* ماضي بسيط | ▶▶▶ | *would ('d) +* المصدر |

▶ If I were you, I wouldn't waste my time.

### 4 Choose the correct answer:

1. If Ali (go - goes - will go) to Cairo, he'll see the Pyramids.
2. They (will - won't - would) find their way home if they had a map.
3. They (will - won't - wouldn't) get home early if they find a taxi.
4. He (can - will - would) live on a farm if he were a farmer.
5. If I met a famous person, I would (take - takes - took) a photo with him.
6. He would be lazy if he (eat - ate - eats) too much.
7. He'd (drive - drove - drives) a tractor if he were a farmer.
8. If he (will be - would be - was) a pilot, he'd travel abroad.
9. If we (go - would go - went) to bed early, we'll get up early.
10. If she doesn't eat healthy food, she (won't - wouldn't - isn't) be strong.
11. Salma (buys - bought - would buy) a car if she had lots of money.
12. If Omar (wins - won - would win) a prize, he'd be happy.
13. How would she feel if she (see - saw - seen) a lion?
14. You (will - won't - wouldn't) cause pollution if you go everywhere by car.
15. If I drink coffee before going to bed, I (would sleep - don't sleep - sleeps) well.
16. If I (have - had - having) a horse, I'd ride it every day.
17. If you sleep well, you (felt - feel - are feeling) fresh during the day.
18. If she (eats - eat - doesn't eat) her breakfast, she will be hungry.
19. He will waste water if he (has - have - will have) lots of showers every day.
20. If you get up early, you (will - won't - would) miss the bus.

## 5 Complete with the correct form of the verbs in brackets:

1. If I ............................ (have) a car, I would travel to Alexandria.
2. If I ............................ (win) a medal, I would be happy.
3. If we went to Cairo on vacation, we ............................ (go) to the zoo.
4. If it snowed in October, I ............................ (be) happy.
5. If I saw a snake, I ............................ (be) frightened.
6. If I had 10 million LE, I ............................ (buy) a chocolate factory.

## Reported speech (Statements)

تحويل الجملة الخبرية إلى الكلام الغير مباشر

| | |
|---|---|
| *present simple* ▶▶▶ | *past simple* |
| *present continuous* ▶▶▶ | *past continuous* |
| *will – can* ▶▶▶ | *would - could* |

- Ahmed said, "I'm very tired."
  ▶ Ahmed said that he was very tired.
- Heba said to Nahla, "I visit my aunt every week."
  ▶ Heba told Nahla that she visited her aunt every week.
- "I'm doing my homework," said Ashraf.
  ▶ Ashraf said that he was doing his homework.
- "I can't carry the box," Amal said to her mother.
  ▶ Amal told her mother that she couldn't carry the box.

## 6 Change the following sentences into reported speech:

1. "Mom is going to take Omar to the club," said Ali.
   ▶ ........................................................................................ .
2. "I like shopping with Mom," said Aya.
   ▶ ........................................................................................ .
3. "I'll travel to Aswan next month," said Nour.
   ▶ ........................................................................................ .





4. "Omnia can speak English well," said Nashwa.
   ▶ ............................................................................................ .

5. "Hasan is going to visit his cousins in Tanta," said Magdi.
   ▶ ............................................................................................ .

6. "Mr Hosam works in Cairo," said Shady.
   ▶ ............................................................................................ .

## 7 Complete the following sentences with the correct verb:

1. "I go to the club on Sunday," said Ali.
   ▶ Ali said he ................................... to the club on Sunday.

2. "I can play tennis," said Manar.
   ▶ Manar said she ................................... play tennis.

3. "I'm going to cook the food," said Laila.
   ▶ Laila said she ................................... going to cook the food.

4. "I visit my aunt every week," said Tarek.
   ▶ Tarek said he ................................... his aunt every week.

## Question Tag السؤال المذيل

- ▶ Amira is very clever, **isn't she**?
- ▶ You haven't cooked the food yet, **have you**?
- ▶ Amgad phoned me yesterday, **didn't he**?
- ▶ We have dinner at four, **don't we**?
- ▶ Jana has two blue dresses, **doesn't she**?

## 8 Choose the correct answer:

1. Ramy has played football, (hasn't - doesn't - isn't) he?
2. Nour is good at English, (hasn't - doesn't - isn't) she?
3. Mom hasn't finished the food yet, (doesn't - has - haven't) she?





4. They weren't at home last night, (were - are - do) they?
5. They always play tennis on Saturday, (don't - haven't - aren't) they?
6. I'll phone you tonight, (won't - can't - wouldn't) I?
7. He can carry this bag, (couldn't - could - can't) he?
8. We played the match last week, (hadn't - didn't - weren't) we?
9. Amr (is - was - has) ill, wasn't he?
10. Heba won't visit us tomorrow, (will - can - would) she?
11. Ali likes swimming, doesn't (she - her - he)?
12. He (get - gets - got) up late, didn't he?
13. Manar (looked - looks - look) very angry, doesn't she?
14. Aya bought a new skirt, didn't (he - her - she)?
15. Maha likes sweets, (hasn't - doesn't - isn't) she?

## 9 Write the question tags of the following sentences:

1. Nada didn't have a new dress, ..................................?
2. It won't rain tomorrow, ..................................................?
3. Your sister goes to school, ..........................................?
4. We can't go home early today, ..................................?
5. Saad plays tennis well, ..................................................?
6. She has a nice blue dress, ..........................................?
7. He went to the club yesterday, ..................................?
8. You live in Giza, ..........................................................?

## (Adjectives) Comparison

### Comparative degree:

- I'm younger than my sister.
- Football is more popular than handball.
- Cats are less dangerous than crocodiles.

### Superlative degree:

- The lion is the strongest animal.
- Football is the most popular sport.
- This is the least expensive shirt I have.

## 10 Choose the correct answer:

1. Nour is (tall - taller - the tallest) than her sister.
2. Omar is the (fast - faster - fastest) boy in the class.
3. That's the (more - least - most) expensive dress in the shop. I don't have enough money to buy it.
4. The blue skirt is (the most - more - the least) beautiful than the black one.
5. My father is (the - than - then) tallest one in the family.
6. Who is (old - older - the oldest) than Gamal?
7. Which is (small - smaller - the smallest) animal in the zoo?
8. Which story in the library is (more exciting - most exciting - the most exciting)?
9. The orange tree is (smaller than - the smallest - smaller) the mango tree.
10. Tennis is (less - least - the least) popular sport in Egypt.
11. Which hobby is (more relaxing - the least relaxing - less relaxing) one?
12. Making models is (the least - less - more) popular activity in our class.
13. Playing football is (most - more - the least) popular than doing creative hobbies.
14. Playing cards is (the most - less - the least) interesting than playing computer games.
15. Which sport is (most dangerous - least dangerous - more dangerous) than climbing mountains?
16. Drawing is the (most - more - least) exciting hobby for me. I love drawing natural views.
17. Playing sports is (exciting - the most exciting - more exciting) than watching it.
18. Silver is (less expensive - the least expensive - the most expensive) than gold.
19. Art class is (the least interesting - more interesting - the most interesting) class. We enjoy it a lot.
20. Tennis is (the most - the least - less) exciting than boxing.

## 11 Read and complete the sentences with the words from the box:

less – more – the least – the most

1. Amir thinks that playing football is .................................... exciting than swimming. He doesn't like swimming.
2. Drawing is .................................... popular hobby in our family. We love it!
3. Phones are .................................... expensive to buy than cars.
4. My friends and I don't like cooking. It's .................................... popular activity in my class.

## everybody - everything - somebody - something - anybody - anything - nobody - nothing

### everybody - everything

❑ تُستخدم في الجمل المثبتة أو الاستفهامية (Positive - Questions).

### somebody - something

❑ تُستخدم في الجمل المثبتة (Positive).

### anybody - anything

❑ تُستخدم في الجمل المنفية أو الاستفهامية (Negative - Questions).

### nobody - nothing

❑ تُستخدم في الجمل المثبتة لتعطي معنى النفي (Positive).

- Everybody goes to the sports center on Thursday night.
- I packed up everything for my trip.
- I bought something there last week.
- Can you see anybody in the park?
- I found nobody there to help me.
- Did you find anything in the fridge?
- He called somebody for help.
- I heard nothing. Would you repeat, please?





## 12 Choose the correct answer:

1. I'm thirsty. Is there (anything - everything - nothing ) to drink in the fridge?
2. There is (everybody - somebody - nobody ) at the door. I think it's your friend.
3. Mariam is really kind, so (nobody - anybody - everybody ) likes her.
4. (Everything - Everybody - Something ) in this store is made from wood.
5. There is (nothing - everything - something ) on the table for Omar. It's a present from his mom!
6. She knows (anybody - anyone - somebody ) in the club.
7. The test was very difficult. Did (nobody - anybody - somebody ) do well in it?
8. I didn't buy (something - anything - nothing ) last week.
9. (Somebody - Everybody - Nobody ) showed me around the Pyramids when I was six.
10. (Nobody - Everybody - Anybody ) in my family loves summer vacation. It's fun.
11. Is (something - everything - nobody ) OK?
12. There (were - was - are ) nothing interesting on TV last night.
13. I didn't know (nobody - somebody - anybody ) on my first day at school.
14. Somebody (am - is - are ) at the door. Can anybody open the door?

## enough - too

◈ **too** جدًّا جدًّا (أكثر من اللازم) ▶▶▶ **too** ........ (adj صفة) .......

◈ **enough** كافي ▶▶▶ (adj صفة) ....... **enough**

- Ahmed likes basketball, but he is too short . = He isn't tall enough to play it. = He **can't** play basketball because he is short.
- I want to carry this box, but it's too big. = It isn't small enough. = I can't carry this box because it's big.

◀ (**too**) تتبع بصفة و تعطي معنى النفي .

◀ (**enough**) تأتي قبلها الصفة.





## 13 Choose the correct answer:

1. She can't tell me what to do. She isn't (enough old - too enough - old enough).
2. Nada is (too - two - to) short. She can't play basketball.
3. This bag is too (heavy - heavier - heaviest) for you to carry.
4. I want to carry this box, but it's (too - enough - much) big.
5. I'm very sorry. I wasn't (patient enough - more patient - enough patient) to listen to your advice.
6. The weather was (to - too - enough) cold for me to go out.
7. He is old (too - enough - much) to feed himself.
8. The tiger is (fast - faster - the fastest) enough to catch a deer.
9. He is clever (too - enough - very) to get the full mark.
10. My Grandma is (too - enough - much) old. She can't run.
11. The elephant is (enough strong - strong enough - strong too) to break the tree.
12. He isn't strong (too - many - enough) to move the desk.
13. The car was (to expensive - enough expensive - too expensive) for him to buy.
14. He isn't fast (too - much - enough) to win the race.

## 14 Read and complete with (too or enough):

1. Esraa can't play basketball because she is ................................ short.
2. The turtle isn't fast ................................ to arrive before the rabbit.
3. Samy tells Ibrahim he shouldn't jump in the water because he is ................................ young.
4. The deer isn't strong ................................ to fight the lion.
5. Ahmed likes basketball, but he isn't tall ................................ to play it.
6. We can't swim today because the water is ................................ cold.




In this unit I will ....

- talk about different creative activities.
- understand and use the zero conditional.
- listen to and understand an interview.
- understand and use prepositional phrases.
- read and understand a poem.
- read and understand an article.
- write a report using time clauses and sequencing.
- read and understand a story.

## Objectives

| | |
|---|---|
| Vocabulary | **Creative activities:** animation, beads, clay, cloth, collage, jewelry, junk modeling, outdoor art, pottery, rocket, sculpture<br>**Words related to music:** award, cello, choir, musician, perform, stage, talented<br>**Words related to art:** apron, advertisement, bubbles, costumes, edit, exhibition, irregular, kiln, lump, materials, photography, play [n], reflect, sculptor, spheres, stainless steel, wheel |
| Language | **Zero conditional:**<br>*If you paint, you get paint on your hands.*<br>*.If I go to bed late, I can't wake up in the morning*<br>**:Prepositional phrases**<br>*.I'm always tired after a concert*<br>*.I looked under all the chairs* |
| Reading | An article about a competition; a poem about fireworks; an article about sculptures; a story about a school show |
| Writing | A report using when to sequence events |
| Speaking | Ask and answer about creative activities; ask and answer about when and where something happens; discuss sculptures; discuss a school show |
| Listening | An interview with a musician |
| Life skills | **Self-expression:** varied ways to express yourself<br>**Art appreciation:** learning about sculpture and poetry |
| Values | **Curiosity**<br>**Appreciation of art** |
| Issues and challenges | **Non-discrimination** |
| Integrated cross-curriculum topics | Art: sculptures and their materials |

# Lesson 1 How creative are you?



## Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



**collage**
فن التلصيق (تلصيق أشياء مختلفة على لوحة)



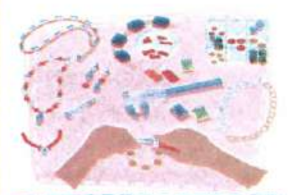
**junk modeling**
تشكيل نماذج من المهملات (الخردة)



**outdoor art**
فن خارجي



**animation**
رسوم متحركة



**making jewelry**
صناعة المجوهرات



**designing clothes**
تصميم الملابس (الأزياء)



**pottery**
صناعة الفُخّار (الخَزَف)



**sculpture**
فن النحت - تمثال منحوت



**creative**
مُبدِع - مُبتَكِر



**competition**
منافسة - مسابقة



**lids**
أغطية (عبوات / زجاجات)



**art exhibition**
مَعرَض فني



**beads**
خَرَز



**recycled cloth**
أقمشة مُعاد تدويرها



**clay**
صلصال



**cardboard box**
علبة من الكارتون



## Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **city museum** | متحف المدينة | **wood** | خشب |
| **project** | مشروع | **stone** | حجارة - أحجار |
| **painting** | رَسمة - لوحة فنية | **shells** | قشور - أصداف |
| **poem** | قصيدة | **bowl** | وعاء - سلطانية |
| **rocket** | صاروخ | **vase** | مزهرية - فازة |
| **completely** | تمامًا - بالكامل - كُليًا | **getting your hands messy** | تجعل يديك مُتسخَتيْن |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **creativity** | إبداع - ابتكار | **different ways** | طرق مختلفة |
| **design skills** | مهارات التصميم | **necklace** | قلادة - عُقد |
| **computer skills** | مهارات الكمبيوتر | **bracelet** | إسورة |
| **technology** | تكنولوجيا | **colored (adj)** | مُلَوَّن |
| **moving pictures** | تحريك الصور | **shape (n)** | شَكْل |
| **outside world** | العالم الخارجي | **a bit of** | قطعة صغيرة من |
| **activities** | أنشطة | **express yourself** | تُعبِّر عن نفسك |

## Conjugation of verbs

### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| enter | يَدْخُل - يُدْخِل | entered | entered |
| appear | يظهر | appeared | appeared |
| express | يُعَبِّر عن | expressed | expressed |
| paint | يطلي - يُلَوِّن | painted | painted |
| discuss | يناقش | discussed | discussed |
| look | ينظر - يبدو | looked | looked |
| talk | يتكلم | talked | talked |
| listen | يستمع | listened | listened |
| check | يفحص - يتفقَّد | checked | checked |
| design | يُصَمِّم | designed | designed |

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| try | يحاول | tried | tried |
| imagine | يتخيل - يتصور | imagined | imagined |
| decide | يُقرِّر | decided | decided |
| save money | يُوفِّر (يدَّخر) مال | saved money | saved money |
| share | يشارك | shared | shared |

## Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| show | يُظهِر - يُبدي | showed | shown |
| send | يُرسِل | sent | sent |
| get | يحصل على | got | got (gotten) |
| make | يجعل - يصنع | made | made |
| build | يبني | built | built |
| find | يجد | found | found |
| wear | يرتدي | wore | worn |
| tell | يُخبر | told | told |
| understand | يفهم | understood | understood |
| read | يقرأ | read | read |
| write | يكتب | wrote | written |
| think | يفكر | thought | thought |
| take | يأخذ | took | taken |

## Did you know? هل تعلم؟

When you are doing a creative activity, you focus on what you're doing. You don't think about your daily life, or even what time it is! This is often called "being in the zone".

عندما تقوم بنشاط إبداعي، فإنك تركز على ما تفعله. أنت لا تنشغل بحياتك اليومية، ولا حتى تنشغل بالوقت! ويُسمَّى هذا غالبًا "الانهماك (الانشغال الشديد) في شيء ممتع بالنسبة لك"






## The lesson notes

### colored - colorful

- colored (adj) — مُلَوَّن (به ألوان - غير خالي من الألوان)
- colorful (adj) — مُلَوَّن (ذو ألوان زاهية وجذابة ومُبهجة)

▶ A collage is made with material, paint, and colored paper.

▶ Look at these beautiful colorful flowers. They are wonderful.

### How creative are you? إلى أي مدى أنت مُبدع (مُبتَكِر)؟

❑ لاحظ تركيبة هذا السؤال حيث أن (How) إن أُتبِعَت بصفة فإنها تسأل عن الصفة التي تليها.

▶ How creative are you?

☆ I'm quite creative. (أنا مبتَكِر إلى حدٍّ ما.)

▶ How good are you at English? (ما مدى إجادتك للغة الإنجليزية؟)

☆ I'm very good at English.

▶ How beautiful is this dress? (ما مدى جَمال هذا الفستان؟)

☆ I think it is not beautiful.

**أمثلة أخرى:**

(How many - How much - How tall - How old - How fast - How heavy ....)

### outdoor (adj)

❑ كلمة (outdoor) هي صفة تعني خارج الأماكن المغلقة (في الهواء الطلق) وعكسها (indoor) ومعناها داخل مكان مُغلق.

▶ Use leaves or shells to make some outdoor art.

▶ Chess (الشطرنج) is an indoor game.

## Show your creativity!

Enter our fun new competition ❶ and show us how creative you are! We want children between the ages of five and fifteen to send us their creative work. Your work will appear in a big art exhibition ❷ in the city museum. There are so many different ways you can express yourself. You could send us a painting, a photo, a poem, or a story. Or why not try something new? Here are some ideas for different creative activities to get you excited!

❶ مسابقة
❷ معرض فني
❸ صندوق كرتوني
❹ أغطية (زجاجات)
❺ تشكيل نماذج من المُهمَلات
❻ مُتّسِخة
❼ صناعة الفُخّار
❽ صلصال
❾ قماش معاد تدويره
❿ فن التلصيق
⓫ مجوهرات
⓬ أساور
⓭ تمثال - منحوتة
⓮ شكْل
⓯ أصداف - قشور
⓰ رسوم متحركة

### Junk modeling

What can you make with a cardboard box ❸? Plastic bottles and lids ❹? Try junk modeling ❺! Use your creative and design skills to build a rocket, a ship, a car, or a house.

### Pottery

Do you like getting your hands messy ❻? Then try pottery ❼! Use clay ❽ to make a bowl, a cup, or a vase.

### Designing clothes

If you can't find anything you want to wear, how about designing and making your own clothes? You can use recycled cloth ❾ to save money and help the planet.

### Making a collage

If you can't decide what to use in your project, use a bit of everything! You could make a beautiful collage ❿ with material, paint, and colored paper.

### Making jewelry

Use beads to make beautiful jewelry ⓫, for example, necklaces or bracelets ⓬.

### Sculpture

You could use wood, clay, or stone to make a sculpture ⓭ of an animal, a person, or a completely new shape ⓮.

### Outdoor art

Use the things you find around you in the outside world, for example, leaves or shells ⓯ to make some outdoor art.

### Computer animation

If you prefer using technology, you could use your computer skills to make an animation ⓰. Moving pictures can tell a great story! There are so many things you can do! How do you like to express yourself?



## Exercises on Lesson 1

### 1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

**beads – cardboard – clay – cloth – computer – leaves**

If you are creative, you can use ❶ ............................ or shells in outdoor art. To make jewelry, you can use different colored ❷ ............................ . You could use plastic bottles or ❸ ............................ in junk modeling. Wood or ❹ ............................ are good things to use for sculptures. You could use a ❺ ............................ to make an animation. If you design clothes, you can save money by using recycled ❻ ............................ .

### 2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

**Taqwa** : Hi, Magda! Have you heard about the creative activities competition?

**Magda** : Hi, Taqwa! Yes, it's a really great ❶ ........................ .

**Taqwa** : How old do you have to be to enter the competition?

**Magda** : They want children between the ages of five and fifteen.

**Taqwa** : What will happen to the children's artworks?

**Magda** : They will appear in a big art ❷ .................. in the city museum.

**Taqwa** : An art exhibition? Which creative activity would you like to try?

**Magda** : Recycling is important, so I would do junk ❸ ........................ .

**Taqwa** : Junk modeling is nice, but I would make some outdoor art.

**Magda** : ❹ ........................ do you like making outdoor art?

**Taqwa** : Because I like collecting shells and making shapes with them.

## 3 Read the following text and answer the questions:

There are different competitions from time to time. Nowadays, there is a competition to show how creative children are! They want children between the ages of five and fifteen to send their creative works. Their works will appear in a big art exhibition in the city museum. There are so many different ways children can express themselves. They could send a painting, a photo, a poem, a story or any other creative work.

### A Choose the correct answer:

1. Nowadays, there is a competition to show how (interested - excited - creative) children are!
2. Their works will appear in a big art exhibition in the city (museum - square - hall).

### B Answer these questions:

3. How old are the children they want?

▶ .................................................................................................... .

4. What works could children send?

▶ .................................................................................................... .

## 4 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. a computer - could - an animation - You - to make - use.

▶ .................................................................................................... .

2. could use - You - or - cardboard - plastic bottles - in junk modeling.

▶ .................................................................................................... .

3. You - leaves or - outdoor art - use - can - shells - in.

▶ .................................................................................................... .

4. a collage - make - to - use - you - can - What?

▶ .................................................................................................... ?

5. How about - clothes - and making - own - your - designing?

▶ ........................................................................................................ ?

6. in - will - art exhibition - Your work - a big - appear.

▶ ........................................................................................................ .

7. recycled cloth - can use - money - You - to - save.

▶ ........................................................................................................ .

8. yourself - to express - like - you - do - How?

▶ ........................................................................................................ ?

## 5 Write an email to your friend Nada:

Tell her how creative you are and the creative activities you can do, such as junk modeling, pottery, designing clothes, or making a collage. Your email address is yasmine@gmail.com and your friend's email address is nada@hotmail.com.

From:

To:

Subject:

........................................................................................................

........................................................................................................

........................................................................................................

........................................................................................................

........................................................................................................

........................................................................................................

........................................................................................................

........................................................................................................

## Lesson 2 Language



### Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



**messy** متسخ



**uncomfortable** غير مريح - مزعج - غير مرتاح



**relaxing** مُريح



**disappear** يختفي

### Prepositions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| good at | جيد في - ماهر في | go for a walk | يتمشّى - يذهب في نزهة ماشيًا |
| bad at | سيئ في | talk about | يتحدث عن |
| arrive at | يصل إلى | get up | ينهض - يستيقظ |

### Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| tips | نصائح | paint (n) | طلاء - دهان |
| that looks good | يبدو هذا جيدًا | luckily | لحسن الحظ |
| I feel better | أشعر بتحسّن | set an alarm | يضبط منبه |
| right way | طريقة صحيحة | any kind of | أي نوع من |
| wrong way | طريقة خطأ | anyway | على أي حال - على العموم |

## Conjugation of verbs

### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| paint | يطلي - يُلَوِّن | painted | painted |
| suppose | يفترض | supposed | supposed |
| disappear | يختفي | disappeared | disappeared |

Term 1

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| talk about | يتكلم عن | talked about | talked about |
| wash | يغسل | washed | washed |
| clean | يُنَظِّف | cleaned | cleaned |
| mix | يخلط - يمزج | mixed | mixed |
| look | يبدو | looked | looked |
| use | يستخدم - يستعمل | used | used |
| arrive at | يصل إلى | arrived at | arrived at |
| prefer | يُفَضِّل | preferred | preferred |
| dry | يُجَفِّف | dried | dried |

## Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| set an alarm | يضبط منبه | set an alarm | set an alarm |
| hear | يسمع | heard | heard |
| make | يصنع - يجعل | made | made |
| know | يعلم - يعرف | knew | known |
| feel | يشعر - يحس | felt | felt |
| leave | يغادر - يترك | left | left |
| go | يذهب | went | gone |
| get up | ينهض - يستيقظ | got up | got up |

## Definitions تعريفات SB Student's Book

| | |
|---|---|
| *messy* | : not clean or tidy |
| *disappear* | : to go away; you can't see it any more |
| *uncomfortable* | : not feeling nice on your skin |
| *relaxing* | : making you happy and not worried |

## Read and learn

### Noha and Hesham's favorite creative activities



**Noha** : Have you heard about this competition, Hesham? It's for any kind of creative project ❶. I'd like to enter.

**Hesham** : Oh wow, that looks good. What are you going to make?

**Noha** : I don't know. My favorite activity ❷ is painting ❸. I always feel happy when I'm painting. If I'm sad, I paint. Then I feel better.

**Hesham** : Hmm. If I paint, I don't feel happy. I'm not very good at it!

**Noha** : Yes, you are! Anyway, no one is bad at a creative project. You can do or make anything you like. There's no right or wrong!

**Hesham** : I prefer making things with my hands. I like sculpture ❹ or junk modeling ❺, but my favorite is pottery ❻. I think it's really relaxing!

**Noha** : Oh, I don't agree. I don't like pottery because I don't like getting my hands messy. I think it's really uncomfortable to have clay ❼ on my hands.

**Hesham** : But if you paint, you get paint on your hands.

**Noha** : Well, yes, I suppose ❽ you're right. Luckily, the paint disappears quickly when I wash them!

❶ مشروع إبداعي
❷ نشاط
❸ التلوين - الطلاء
❹ فن النحت
❺ تشكيل نماذج من المهملات
❻ صناعة الفخّار
❼ صلصال
❽ يفترض - يعتقد

## Grammar Study



### The Zero Conditional الحالة الصفرية

■ **We use the zero conditional to talk about facts and things that are true for us. We form it using (if) or (when), and the present simple or a modal like can.**





■ تُستخدم حالة (if) الصفرية للحديث عن الحقائق والأشياء الواقعية بالنسبة لنا. تُكَوَّن الجملة في هذه الحالة باستخدام (if) أو (when)، مع المضارع البسيط أو مع فعل ناقص مثل (can).

- If you paint, you get paint on your hands.
- If I go to bed late, I can't wake up in the morning.

■ **We also use the zero conditional to give instructions or make suggestions. To do this, we form it using (if) or (when), and the imperative.**

■ كما تُستخدم حالة (if) الصفرية لإعطاء التعليمات أو لعمل اقتراحات. لفعل ذلك، تُكَوَّن الجملة باستخدام (if) أو (when) وصيغة الأمر.

- If it starts to rain, use an umbrella.
- When you arrive at school, come to the classroom.

■ لاحظ أن الجملة الثانية تكون في صيغة الأمر أي تبدأ بالفعل في المصدر، ويمكن أن تبدأ بـ (Don't) ثم المصدر في حالة الأمر المنفي.

- If it starts to rain, don't go out.

## Exercises on Lesson 2

### 1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

**clean – leave – make – mix – use**

Noha is good at painting. She tells us some important painting tips! If you mix blue and yellow, you can ❶ .................. green. If you ❷ .................. red and blue, you don't make pink. You make purple! If you put your brush in water, you ❸ .................. it. If you ❹ .................. your painting for about an hour, the paint dries. If you ❺ .................. recycled paper, you can help the environment.



### 2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

**Noha** : Have you heard about this competition, Hesham? It's for any kind of creative project. I'd like to enter.

**Hesham** : Oh wow, that looks good. What are you going to make?

**Noha** : I don't know. My favorite activity is ❶ ..................... . I always feel happy when I'm painting. If I'm sad, I paint. Then I feel better.

**Hesham** : I prefer making things with my ❷ ........................ . I like sculpture or junk modeling, but my favorite is pottery. I think it's really relaxing!

**Noha** : Oh, I don't agree. I don't like pottery because I don't like getting my hands messy. I think it's really uncomfortable to have ❸ .................. on my hands.

**Hesham** : But if you paint, you get paint on your hands.

**Noha** : Well, yes, I suppose you 're right. Luckily, the paint ❹ ........................ quickly when I wash them!

## 3 Choose the correct answer:



1. If I do something creative, I (feeling - feel) happy. SB
2. When you go for a walk, you can (find - found) things for outdoor art. SB
3. When I meet my friends, we (making - make) animations. SB
4. If she has clay, she can (make - makes) pottery to give her friends. SB
5. If you want to get up early, you can (set - sets) an alarm. SB
6. When you go to the beach, (taking - take) a sunhat. SB
7. If you mix blue and yellow, you can (makes - making - make) green.
8. If you use recycled paper, you (can't - could - can) help the environment.
9. If you put your brush in water, you (cleaning - clean - cleaned) it.
10. If you leave your painting for about an hour, the paint (dries - dried - dry).
11. If you mix red and blue, you (make - don't make - doesn't make) pink. You make purple!
12. He cycles to work if the weather (was - is - are) good.
13. If she's sad, she (paint - don't paint - paints). Then she feels better.
14. How (did - does - is) Noha feel when she is painting?
15. If it (start - doesn't start - starts) to rain, use an umbrella.
16. When you arrive at school, (comes - come - doesn't come) to the classroom.

17. What do you do if you (feel - doesn't feel - feels) sad?
18. If you paint, you (get - gets - got) paint on your hands.
19. If I go to bed late, I (doesn't - gets - can't) wake up in the morning.
20. If babies (were - are - is) hungry, they cry.
21. The paint (disappears - disappear - don't disappear) quickly when I wash my hands!
22. He always takes his umbrella when it (rained - doesn't rain - rains).

## 4 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. Noha - does - feel - How - painting - she's - when?

   ▶ ........................................................................................ ?

2. prefer - I - things - making - my hands - with.

   ▶ ........................................................................................ .

3. modeling - and junk - sculpture - like - I.

   ▶ ........................................................................................ .

4. I - I'm - feel happy - when - painting - always.

   ▶ ........................................................................................ .

5. this competition, - you - heard - Have - about - Hesham?

   ▶ ........................................................................................ ?

6. make - to - going - you - are - What?

   ▶ ........................................................................................ ?

7. painting - favorite - My - is - activity.

   ▶ ........................................................................................ .

8. Why - pottery - Noha - like - doesn't?

   ▶ ........................................................................................ ?

9. disappears - The paint - when - my hands - I - wash!

   ▶ ........................................................................................ !

10. if - you - do - sad - What do - feel - you?

   ▶ ........................................................................................ .




# Lesson 3 A night of colors



## Poetry الشعر

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| poem | قصيدة شعرية | lines | سطور |
| poet | شاعر | rhyme (n) | قافية (في الشِعر) |
| verse | بيت شِعر - مقطع شِعري | rhyme (v) | يُقفّي - يَنْظِم الشعر المُقفّى |

## Adjectives صفات

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| bright | لامع - برّاق | real | حقيقي |
| dark | مظلمة - سوداء | loud | عالي الصوت |
| quiet | هادئ | high | عالٍ - مرتفع |
| colorful | مُلَوّن - مُزركش | far away | بعيدة |
| so beautiful | جميل جدًا | still | ثابت |

## Adverbs ظروف (أحوال)

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| brightly | بلمعان - ببريق | noisily | بشكل صاخب - بضجيج |
| brilliantly | بتوهُّج | happily | بسعادة - بِفَرَح |

## Prepositions حروف جر

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| shoot up | تنطلق لأعلى | take off | ينطلق |
| at the end of ... | في نهاية .... | for example | على سبيل المثال |

## Other words كلمات أخرى

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| a night of colors | ليلة مليئة بالألوان | hold our breath | نحبس أنفاسنا |
| day | النهار | fireworks | ألعاب نارية |
| concert | حفلة موسيقية | flashes of light | ومضات من الضوء |
| jewels | جواهر - حُليّ | blasts | فرقعات - انفجارات |
| gold | ذهب | bang (v) | فرقعة |
| silver | فضة | describe | يَصِف |





# Conjugation of verbs

## Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| describe | يَصِف | described | described |
| explode | يفرقع - يتفجر | exploded | exploded |
| taste | يتذوق | tasted | tasted |
| smell | يشم | smelled | smelled |
| shout | يصيح - يصرخ | shouted | shouted |
| cheer | يهتف - يبته | cheered | cheered |
| dance | يرقص | danced | danced |
| imagine | يتخيل - [illegible]ور | imagined | imagined |
| look like | يبدو [illegible] | looked like | looked like |
| fill | يملأ | filled | filled |

## Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| [illegible]ite | يكتب | wrote | written |
| hear | يسمع | heard | heard |
| [illegible] | يشعر - يحس | felt | felt |
| see | يرى | saw | seen |
| stand together | نقف سويًا | stood together | stood together |
| shoot up | تنطلق لأعلى | shot up | shot up |
| fly | يطير | flew | flown |
| take off | ينطلق | took off | taken off |
| shine | تلمع - تسطع - تُشرق | shone | shone |
| hold | يُمسك | held | held |
| burn | يحترق - يشتعل | burnt (burned) | burnt (burned) |

## Tip!

- In a poem, the poet sometimes uses words or something that is not real to help the reader imagine the way something real looks. For example, the fireworks in the sky are not really jewels, but they are so beautiful that they look like jewels.

في القصيدة، يستخدم الشاعر كلمات أو شيئًا غير حقيقي أحيانًا لمساعدة القارئ على تخيُّل الشكل الذي يبدو عليه الشيء الحقيقي. على سبيل المثال، الألعاب النارية في السماء ليست مجوهرات حقًا، ولكنها جميلة جدًا لدرجة تجعلها تُشبه المجوهرات.

### Read and learn



## A Night of Colors

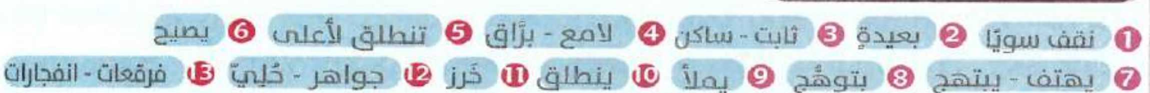


We **stand together** (1) in the cold, black night,
The sky is dark and **far away** (2).
Everything is quiet and **still** (3), until – **BANG!**
The lights make the sky as **bright** (4) as day.

Rockets **shoot up** (5) into the air,
We **shout** (6) and **cheer** (7), watching them fly.
Colors burn **brilliantly** (8) against the black,
We see them dance happily through the sky.

The sound **fills** (9) my ears, as each rocket **takes off** (10), Exploding noisily with flashes of light. **Beads** (11) of red, yellow, silver, and gold,
Are beautiful **jewels** (12) in the black night.

With **blasts** (13) so loud and rockets up high,
A colorful fire against the stars.
The sky **shines brightly** (14) with light and color,
We **hold our breath** (15), looking out far.



(1) نقف سويًا (2) بعيدةٍ (3) ثابت - ساكن (4) لامع - برّاق (5) تنطلق لأعلى (6) يصيح
(7) يهتف - يبتهج (8) بتوهُّج (9) يملأ (10) ينطلق (11) خَرز (12) جواهر - حُليّ (13) فرقعات - انفجارات
(14) تسطع ببهاء - تلمع ببريق (15) نحبس أنفاسنا



## Exercises on Lesson 



### 1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

**imagine - poem - jewels - poet - fireworks**

In a ❶ ......................, the poet sometimes uses words or something that is not real to help the reader ❷ ...................... the way something real looks. For example, in our poem, the ❸ ...................... in the sky are not really ❹ ......................, but they are so beautiful that they look like jewels.

### 2 Choose the correct answer:

1. He is a (poem - poetry - poet). He wrote lots of poems.
2. A (verse - rocket - light) is a part of the poem.
3. A (poem - verse - rhyme) is when two words sound the same at the end of the word.
4. Rockets (wake - shoot - run) up into the air and quickly go through the sky.
5. Most (jewels - pottery - cloth) are made of gold and silver.
6. In a (class - concert - test), musicians play pieces of music.
7. When a rocket takes (of - off - from), it makes much noise.
8. We (catch - hold - test) our breath while watching exciting matches.
9. It's usually (dark - day - sunny) at night.
10. When we shoot (fireworks - stars - suns) into the air, they burn brilliantly against the black sky.

### 3 Read the following text and answer the questions:

Hi! I'm Tamer. Last week, my friend Hani invited me and some of his friends to his birthday party. It was in a park in the open air at night. That night was very dark. We stood together in the cold, black night. The sky was dark and far away. Everything was quiet and still until the lights made the sky as bright as day. Rockets of fireworks shot up into the air. We shouted and cheered. Colors burned brilliantly against the black sky. The sound filled my ears as each rocket took off, exploding noisily with flashes of light. The sky shone brightly with light and color.





We held our breath, looking out far. We were very happy. We ate, drank and played games. It was a day to remember.

## A Choose the correct answer:

1. At first, the sky was (dark - bright - brilliant) and far away.
2. (Fireworks - Stars - Moons) made the sky full of colors and lights.

## B Answer these questions:

3. Where was the party?
▶ ........................................................................................................ .
4. What did the children do at the party?
▶ ........................................................................................................ .

## 4 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. the sky - make - The lights - day - as bright as.
▶ ........................................................................................................ .
2. are - lines - How many - each verse - in?
▶ ........................................................................................................ ?
3. Rockets - into - air - the - shoot up.
▶ ........................................................................................................ .
4. find - words - Can - rhyming - you - any?
▶ ........................................................................................................ ?
5. jewels - look like - the sky - in - The colors.
▶ ........................................................................................................ .

## 5 Write a paragraph of (60) words using the following elements:

**"A party that I liked a lot"**

▶ Ideas to help you: - When was the party? And Where?
- What did you and your friends (family) do? - Why did you like it?

..........................................................................................
..........................................................................................
..........................................................................................
..........................................................................................

Term 1

# Lesson 4 Beautiful sculptures



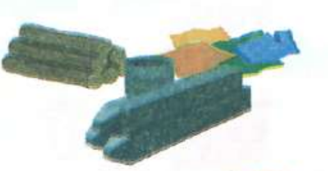
## Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



**sculptures** منحوتات - تماثيل



**sculptor** نحّات



**materials** مواد خام



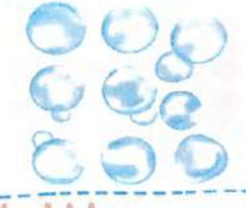
**spheres** كُرات صغيرة



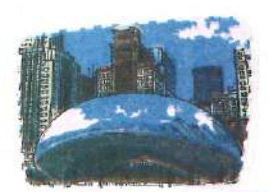
**pieces of art** قِطَع فنية



**irregular pattern** نمط غير منتظم



**bubbles** فقاعات - فقاقيع



**reflect** يعكس - يُبيِّن - يُظهر

## Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

### Adjectives

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| new | جديد | shiny | لامع - برَّاق |
| interesting | مشوِّق - مثير للاهتمام | huge mirror | مرآة ضخمة |
| famous | مشهور | popular sight | مَعْلَم سياحي شهير |

### Places

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| UK | بريطانيا - المملكة المتحدة | London | لندن |
| USA | الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية | Chicago | شيكاغو (إحدى الولايات الأمريكية) |
| Spain | إسبانيا | Bilbao | بلباو (مدينة في إسبانيا) |
| India | الهند | Guggenheim Museum | متحف جوجنهايم (موجود في مدينة بلباو) |





## Other words

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| public places | أماكن عامة | great artist | فنان رائع - فنان عظيم |
| stainless steel | استانلس ستيل - فولاذ مقاوم للصدأ | designer | مُصمِّم |
| shapes | أشكال | image | صورة |
| height | ارتفاع | stay in place | تظل محتفظة بقيمتها الفنية |
| location | موقع | all over the world | في كل أنحاء العالم |
| floating | طافٍ - عائم | over the years | على مدار السنين |

## Conjugation of verbs

### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| move | يتحرك | moved | moved |
| study | يدرس - يذاكر | studied | studied |
| arrange | يُرتِّب - يُنَظِّم | arranged | arranged |
| stay | يبقى - يظل | stayed | stayed |
| damage | يُتْلِف - يُدَمِّر | damaged | damaged |
| walk | يمشي | walked | walked |
| reflect | يعكس - يُبيِّن - يُظهر | reflected | reflected |
| float | يطفو | floated | floated |

## Anish Kapoor's sculptures



Anish Kapoor is a **sculptor** ❶. He was born in India in 1954, and moved to London, UK, to study art in 1973. He likes to use new and interesting **shapes** ❷ as well as different **materials** ❸. Kapoor makes very large **pieces of art** ❹ for public places, and people can see his art all over the world.



❶ نحّات ❷ أشكال
❸ مواد ❹ قطع فنية

Term 1



Tall Tree and the Eye is a famous **sculpture** ⑤ by Anish Kapoor. It stands outside the Guggenheim Museum in Bilbao, Spain. This sculpture is about 13 meters tall. It is made of 73 stainless steel balls, or **spheres** ⑥. Stainless steel is very **shiny** ⑦, so when you look at Tall Tree and the Eye, you can see your own face many times. The spheres are arranged in an irregular **pattern** ⑧. This makes them look like **bubbles** ⑨ which are floating! Kapoor is a great artist. He understands math well, and he also understands materials. This means he can make sculptures that will stay in place for a long time. For example, in Tall Tree and the Eye, Kapoor uses stainless steel because it is a very strong material. It's very good for outdoor sculptures because it stays shiny, and bad weather doesn't **damage** ⑩ it. Over the years, Kapoor has made many other famous sculptures. Another famous Kapoor sculpture is Cloud Gate. You can see it in Chicago, USA. Cloud Gate is very high – people can even walk under it! It is also made of stainless steel, which **reflects** ⑪ the sky, the buildings, and the people around it, like a huge mirror. It is a very popular **sight** ⑫ to visit in Chicago.

⑤ تمثال - منحوتة
⑥ كرات
⑦ لامع - براق
⑧ نمط
⑨ فقاعات
⑩ يُتلِف
⑪ يعكس
⑫ مَعْلَم - مَزار

## Definitions تعريفات SB Student's Book

| | |
|---|---|
| *sculptor* | : a person who makes sculptures |
| *bubble* | : a liquid ball full of air |
| *sphere* | : the shape of a ball |
| *irregular* | : not following a pattern |
| *reflect* | : when a mirror shows an image |
| *material* | : what something is made from, for example, gold, clay, wood |





## Activity Book Text

The Sibelius Monument was built in 1967 to celebrate the famous musician Jean Sibelius, who died in 1957.
Sibelius was from Finland, a country in Northern Europe. Sibelius's work is still popular today and played at concerts and in theaters all around the world.
The sculpture was created by the female artist Eila Hiltunen, who was also from Finland. The sculpture has 600 steel pipes of different sizes in an irregular shape. It is 8.5 meters high and 10.5 meters wide. Hiltunen wanted the sculpture to look like the way Sibelius's music sounds. You can see this sculpture in the Sibelius Park, in Helsinki, the capital city of Finland.

بُنيَ نُصب سبيليوس التذكاري عام 1967 تخليدًا للموسيقار الشهير جان سبيليوس الذي تُوفِّي عام 1957. كان سبيليوس من دولة فنلندا، وهي تقع في شمال أوروبا. لا تزال أعمال سبيليوس تحظى بشعبية حتى يومنا هذا ويتم عرضها في الحفلات الموسيقية والمسارح في جميع أنحاء العالم. التمثال من صنع الفنانة إيلا هيلتونن وهي أيضًا من فنلندا. يتكون التمثال من 600 أنبوب فولاذي بأحجام مختلفة في شكل غير منتظم. يبلغ ارتفاعه 8.5 مترًا وعرضه 10,5 مترًا. أرادت هيلتونن أن يبدو شكل التمثال مثل صوت موسيقى سبيليوس. تستطيع أن ترى هذا التمثال في منتزه سبيليوس، في هلسنكي عاصمة فنلندا.

## Exercises on Lesson 

### 1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

**shapes – public – sculptor – art – materials**

Anish Kapoor is a ❶ .......................... . He was born in India in 1954, and moved to London, UK, to study art in 1973. He likes to use new and interesting ❷ ....................... as well as different ❸ .......................... . Kapoor makes very large pieces of art for public places, and people can see his ❹ ...................... all over the world.

## 2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

**Mariam** : Hi, Yasmine! Do you know Anish Kapoor?

**Yasmine** : Hi, Mariam! No, I don't know him. Who is he?

**Mariam** : He is a ❶ ...................... . He can make amazing sculptures.

**Yasmine** : Where is Anish Kapoor from?

**Mariam** : He was born in India but he moved to London, UK.

**Yasmine** : What ❷ ...................... does he use for making sculptures?

**Mariam** : He uses stainless steel as a material to make his sculptures.

**Yasmine** : Why does he use ❸ ...................... steel?

**Mariam** : He uses stainless steel because it is a very strong material. It's very good for outdoor sculptures because it stays shiny, and bad weather doesn't ❹ ...................... it.

## 3 Choose the correct answer:

Student's Book

1. A (sculptor - bubble) is a liquid ball full of air. SB
2. A (sphere - square) is the shape of a ball. SB
3. The word (irregular - stainless steel) means not following a pattern. SB
4. When a mirror shows an image, it (understands - reflects) the image. SB
5. The (material - sculpture) is what something is made from, for example, gold, clay, or wood. SB
6. The (sculptor - designer) is a person who makes sculptures. SB
7. This dress is made of cotton. It's a very good (sphere - material - bubble).
8. The (triangle - square - sphere) is completely round, like a ball.
9. Stainless steel is a very (dark - black - shiny) material. It is bright.

10. Mirrors (watch - look - reflect) the images of things.
11. The spheres of this sculpture look like (bubbles - squares - triangles) which are floating!
12. Anish Kapoor is a (sculptor - tailor - sailor). He can make amazing sculptures.
13. When we put a plastic ball in water, it (floats - walks - arranges).
14. Kapoor uses stainless steel because it is a very strong (pattern - material - bubble).

## 4 Read the following text and answer the questions:

Anish Kapoor is a sculptor. He was born in India in 1954, and moved to London, UK, to study art in 1973. He likes to use new and interesting shapes as well as different materials. Kapoor makes very large pieces of art for public places, and people can see his art all over the world. Kapoor is a great artist. He understands math well, and he also understands materials. This means he can make sculptures that will stay in place for a long time.

### A Choose the correct answer:

1. Anish Kapoor studied art in (India - UK - USA).
2. Kapoor is a great (actor - writer - artist).

### B Answer these questions:

3. How old was Kapoor when he went to London?
   ▶ ..................................................................................................... .
4. Why can Kapoor make sculptures that will stay in place for a long time?
   ▶ ..................................................................................................... .

## 5 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. does - Why - stainless steel - use - Kapoor?

▶ ........................................................................................................ ?

2. Kapoor - sculptures - many - made - famous - has.

▶ ........................................................................................................ .

3. shiny - very - is - steel - Stainless.

▶ ........................................................................................................ .

4. about - sculpture - is - This - tall - 13 meters.

▶ ........................................................................................................ .

5. from - Anish Kapoor - is - Where?

▶ ........................................................................................................ ?

6. are arranged - The spheres - in - pattern - an irregular.

▶ ........................................................................................................ .

7. great - is - artist - Kapoor - a.

▶ ........................................................................................................ .

8. art - study - Kapoor - did - Where?

▶ ........................................................................................................ ?





## Lesson 5 Language

### Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



**award – prize**
جائزة



**talented**
موهوب



**musical skills**
مهارات موسيقية



**musician**
موسيقار - عازف



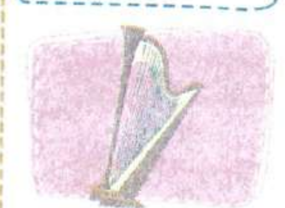
**perform**
يؤدي



**guitar**
الجيتار



**cello**
التشيللو (آلة موسيقية)



**musical instrument**
آلة موسيقية



**interviewer**
محاور – مذيع



**actor**
ممثّل



**stage**
خشبة المسرح



**theater**
مسرح

### Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| concert | حفلة موسيقية | magazine | مجلة |
| poems | قصائد شعرية | imagination | خيال |
| special ability | قدرة خاصة | for over an hour | لأكثر من ساعة |
| his own songs | أغانيه الخاصة | on a sunny day | في يوم مشمس |
| strings | أوتار (الآلات الموسيقية) | somewhere | في مكان ما |
| do something well | يُتقن فعل شيء ما | everywhere | في كل مكان |

## Adjectives

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| confident | واثق | a bit nervous | متوتر بعض الشيء |
| amazing | مدهش - مذهل | lucky | محظوظ |
| surprised | مندهش - متفاجئ | tired | مُجهَد - مُتعَب |

# Conjugation of verbs

## Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| perform | يؤدي | performed | performed |
| act | يُمَثِّل | acted | acted |
| relax | يسترخي - يستريح | relaxed | relaxed |
| play music | يعزف موسيقى | played music | played music |
| practice | يتدرب - يتمرن | practiced | practiced |
| hope | يأمل - يتمنى | hoped | hoped |
| breathe | يتنفس | breathed | breathed |
| love | يحب | loved | loved |
| include | يتضمن - يشمل | included | included |

## Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| do | يفعل | did | done |
| choose | يختار | chose | chosen |
| give | يُعطي - يمنح | gave | given |
| sing | يغني | sang | sung |
| have | يمتلك - لديه | had | had |
| put | يضع | put | put |
| mean | يعني - يقصد | meant | meant |
| forget | ينسى | forgot | forgotten |

## Definitions تعريفات SB Student's Book

| | |
|---|---|
| *musician* | : a person whose job is playing music |
| *talented* | : with a special ability to do something well |
| *perform* | : show your acting or musical skills to other people |
| *stage* | : the part of a theater where actors act |
| *cello* | : a kind of musical instrument with strings |
| *award* | : a prize |

## Read and learn



**Interviewer** : Wow, Mazen! The **concert** ❶ was amazing! You're so **talented** ❷!

**Mazen** : Thank you so much! I loved it, but I'm always **tired** ❸ after a concert!

**Interviewer** : I'm not **surprised** ❹. You played the guitar and sang **for over an hour** ❺!

**Mazen** : It went very quickly. But nobody knew about the problem I had before the concert!

**Interviewer** : A problem – what was that?

**Mazen** : I couldn't find my guitar! I was practicing in a different room this morning, and I put my guitar somewhere, and later I forgot where. I looked everywhere, even under all the chairs, but I couldn't find it! Five minutes before the concert, my friend came into the room. She saw it behind the door. I was very **lucky** ❻!

❶ حفل موسيقي
❷ موهوب
❸ مُتْعَب - مُرْهَق
❹ مندهش
❺ لأكثر من ساعة
❻ محظوظ

# Grammar Study



## The prepositional phrase
عبارة الجر (تحتوي على حرف جر)

- A prepositional phrase is a group of words beginning with a preposition, and ending with a noun, or pronoun, that the preposition refers to, and sometimes an adjective. It doesn't contain a verb. Prepositions can include:

- عبارة الجر هي مجموعة من الكلمات تبدأ بحرف جر، وتنتهي باسم أو ضمير يشير إليه حرف الجر، وأحيانًا تنتهي بصفة. ولا تحتوي عبارة الجر على فعل.
حروف الجر يمكن أن تشمل:

| | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| after | بعد | behind | خلف | in | في | under | تحت |
| before | قبل | for | لـ / لمدة | into | داخل - في | through | خلال - عبر |

- I'm always tired **after** a **concert**.
  preposition — noun — A prepositional phrase
- I'm always a bit nervous when I'm **on stage**.
  preposition — noun — A prepositional phrase
- I try to breathe slowly **before** a **concert** to help me relax.
  preposition — noun — A prepositional phrase
- **At** your last **concert**, you looked very confident.
  preposition — noun — A prepositional phrase

## Exercises on Lesson 5

### 1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

**Interviewer :** Wow, Mazen! The concert was amazing! You're so ❶ .................... .

**Mazen :** Thank you so much! I loved it, but I'm always tired after a concert!





**Interviewer :** I'm not ❷ ...................... . You played the guitar and sang for over an hour!

**Mazen :** It went very quickly. But nobody knew about the ❸ ................. I had before the concert!

**Interviewer :** A problem – what was that?

**Mazen :** I couldn't find my guitar! I was ❹ ...................... in a different room this morning, and I put my guitar somewhere, and later I forgot where. I looked everywhere, even under all the chairs, but I couldn't find it! Five minutes before the concert, my friend came into the room. She saw it behind the door. I was very lucky!

## 2 Choose the correct answer: (Vocabulary)

1. The (singer - excited - musician) is a person whose job is playing music.
2. The (award - game - test) is for his hard work. It was a great prize for him.
3. The (drum - cello - piano) is a kind of musical instrument with strings.
4. They are standing on the (chair - stage - stairs) to give their show to the audience.
5. He is very (confident - talented - lucky). He has a special ability to draw pictures.
6. We watch plays at the (cinema - circus - theater).
7. They are (musicians - actors - singers). We see them acting in movies and plays.
8. Look! They are (performing - painting - producing) their new show on the stage.
9. The cello and guitar are musical (tools - games - instruments).
10. He is a (musician - reader - singer). He is talented at playing the piano.

## 3 Choose the correct answer: (Structures)

1. A musician prepares his instruments (after - before) the concert.
2. A singer sings (in - on) stage.
3. The ball is (into - under) the chair.
4. I always go to beaches (in - on) sunny days.
5. Ali puts his books (at - in) his school bag.
6. Nada goes home (before - after) school.
7. The lion runs (on - through) the forest.
8. I found my cat (in - behind) the door.
9. Aya puts her pens (on - in) the pencil case.
10. Sleep eight hours a day. It's good (in - for) you.
11. Maha was late (for - on) school yesterday.
12. Mom came (on - into) my room and talked to me about my school day.

## 4 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. musician - was - a - Sayed Darwish - Egyptian - famous.
   ▶ ................................................................................ .
2. do - What - do - you - a sunny - on - day?
   ▶ ................................................................................ ?
3. one day - hope - Mazen - does - to do - What?
   ▶ ................................................................................ ?
4. concert - The - amazing - was!
   ▶ ................................................................................ !
5. doing - Mazen - is - What?
   ▶ ................................................................................ ?





6. I - somewhere - guitar - put - my.

▶ ............................................................ .

7. after - always - concert - I'm - a - tired!

▶ ............................................................ .

8. guitar - my - find - couldn't - I!

▶ ............................................................ !

9. is - be - There - going to - next week - a concert.

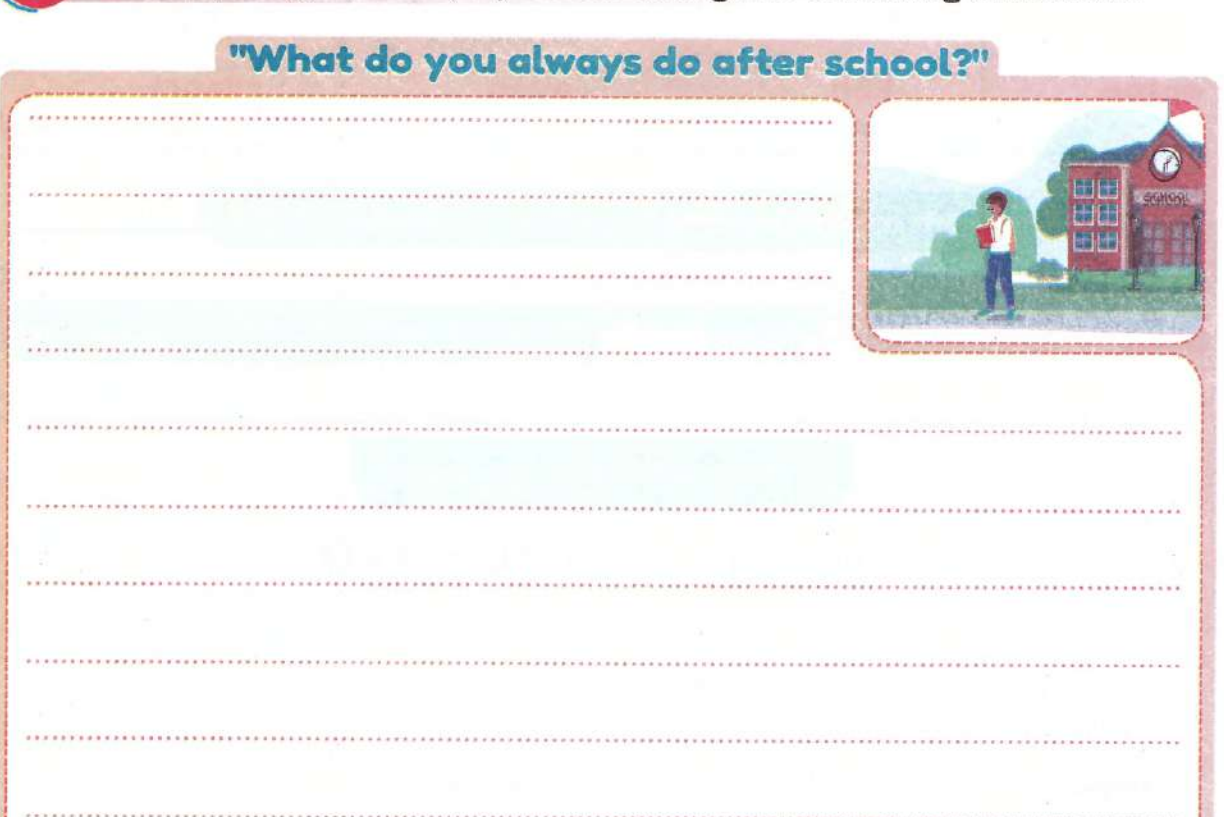
▶ ............................................................ .

10. saw - the door - the guitar - My friend - behind.

▶ ............................................................ .

## 5 Write a paragraph of (60) words using the following elements:

"What do you always do after school?"



# Lesson 6 Writing a report



## Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



**pottery project** مشروع الفخار (الخزف)



**lump of clay** قطعة صلصال



**pottery wheel** عجلة الفخار (الخزف)



**decorate** يُزَيِّن - يُزَخْرِف



**apron** مريلة



**kiln** فرن لِصُنْع الأشياء الخزفية



**oven** فرن



**report** تقرير

## Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **special paint** | طلاء خاص | **the order of events** | ترتيب الأحداث - تسلسُل الأحداث |
| **bowl** | وعاء - سلطانية | **ready** | جاهز - مستعد |
| **our turn** | دورنا | **title** | عنوان |

## Conjugation of verbs

### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| wait | ينتظر | waited | waited |
| enjoy | يستمتع | enjoyed | enjoyed |
| happen | يَحْدُث | happened | happened |
| compare | يقارن | compared | compared |
| decorate | يُزَيِّن - يُزَخْرِف | decorated | decorated |

## Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| put on | يرتدي - يلبس | put on | put on |
| get hot | يَسْخُن - يصبح ساخنًا | got hot | got hot |
| make it hard | يجعله صلبًا | made it hard | made it hard |
| take it out | يُخْرِجه | took it out | taken it out |



### Read and learn

**When you write a report, remember that:** **عند كتابة تقرير، تَذَكَّر الآتي:**

1. The **title** tells readers the topic or subject of the report.
2. The **pictures** make the report look interesting, and help the reader imagine.
3. The report has a **beginning**, a **middle**, and an **end**. It explains what happened and what **order** it happened in.

1. يخبر العنوان القراء بموضوع أو محتوى التقرير.
2. الصور تجعل التقرير يبدو مثيرًا للاهتمام، وتساعد القارئ على التخيُّل.
3. التقرير له بداية ووسط ونهاية. إنه يشرح ما حدث والترتيب الذي حدث به.

### Tip!

- We can use "**when**" to talk about the order in which things happen. Both parts of the sentence are in the same tense.

يمكننا استخدام (when) للحديث عن الترتيب الذي تحدث به الأشياء. ويكون كِلا جُزأَي الجملة في نفس الزمن.

▶ **When** my bowl was finished, my teacher put it in a kiln.

## My pottery project by Amal





My class worked on a **pottery project** ❶ at school this week. We started with a **lump of clay** ❷, and we chose what to make. I wanted to make a bowl.

❶ مشروع الفخار (الخزف)
❷ قطعة صلصال



First, the teacher showed us how to use a **pottery wheel** ❸. Then it was **our turn** ❹. We put on **aprons** ❺ over our clothes. When I put my clay on the wheel, it went fast. It was difficult, and I got messy.

❸ عجلة الفخار (الخزف)
❹ دورنا ❺ مَرَايل



When my bowl was finished, the teacher put it in a **kiln** ❻. This is a special oven which gets very hot. It makes the clay hard and strong.

❻ فرن لصنع الأشياء الخزفية



Finally, the bowl was ready and the teacher took it out. We waited for the bowl to be cool, and then I used special paint to **decorate** ❼ my bowl.

❼ يُزَيِّن



I painted it pink all over first, and waited for the paint to dry. Then I used different colors of paint to make **circles** ❽ all over it.

❽ حلقات



I really **enjoyed** ❾ making my bowl! When I finished my bowl, I gave it to my mom for her birthday. She loved it!

❾ استمتعتُ

## Exercises on Lesson 6

### 1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

**clay – decorated – pottery – project – bowl**

Hello! I'm Amal. My class worked on a ❶ .................... project at school this week. We started with a lump of ❷ ...................., and we chose what to make. I wanted to make a ❸ .................... . I made it and ❹ .................... it. It was an amazing experience.

### 2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

**Interviewer** : What did you do this week, Amal?

**Amal** : My class worked on a pottery ❶ .................... at school this week.

**Interviewer** : Who helped you with this project?

**Amal** : Our ❷ ...................., Mr Yasser.

**Interviewer** : How did he help you?

**Amal** : He showed us how to use a pottery ❸ .................... .

**Interviewer** : What did you make?

**Amal** : I made a bowl and I used special paint to decorate it.

**Interviewer** : Who did you give it to?

**Amal** : I gave it to my ❹ .................... . She was very happy.

### 3 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. bowl - a - make - to - wanted - I.

▶ .................................................... .

2. We - clothes - over - aprons - our - put on.

▶ .................................................... .

3. the clay - makes - hard and - The kiln - strong.

▶ .................................................................................................................... .

4. We - waited for - to be - the bowl - cool.

▶ .................................................................................................................... .

5. special paint - used - I - to - my bowl - decorate.

▶ .................................................................................................................... .

6. really - I - making - enjoyed - bowl - my!

▶ .................................................................................................................... !

7. make - to - what - chose - children - The.

▶ .................................................................................................................... .

8. bowl - circles - made - on - Amal - her.

▶ .................................................................................................................... .

## 4 Read the following text and answer the questions:

My class worked on a pottery project at school this week. First, the teacher showed us how to use a pottery wheel. Then it was our turn. I put on an apron over my clothes and started my pottery object. It was a bowl. When my bowl was finished, the teacher put it in a kiln. This is a special oven which gets very hot. It makes the clay hard and strong. Finally, I painted it pink all over first, and waited for the paint to dry. Then I used different colors of paint to make circles all over it.
I really enjoyed making my bowl! When I finished, I gave it to my mom for her birthday. She loved it and said, "Thanks, Amal."

### A Choose the correct answer:

1. Amal's class worked on a (painting - building - pottery) project at school this week.
2. Amal made a (bowl - pot - pan).





## B Answer these questions:

**3.** What did the teacher do first?

▶ ................................................................................................ .

**4.** What's a kiln?

▶ ................................................................................................ .

## 5 Write a paragraph of (60) words using the following elements:

**- Use "when" to show the order of events.**

**"A creative project you have done at school"**

................................................................................

................................................................................

................................................................................

................................................................................

................................................................................

................................................................................................................

................................................................................................................

................................................................................................................

................................................................................................................

................................................................................................................

................................................................................................................

................................................................................................................





## Lesson 7 Story: Behind the camera



### Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



**school show** عرض مدرسي



**play (n)** مسرحية



**choir** كورَس - كورال - فرقة



**costumes** أزياء - ملابس



**photography** التصوير



**exhibition** مَعْرَض



**advertisement** إعلان



**edit (v)** يُعَدِّل

### Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **the audience** | الجمهور | **artwork** | عمل فني |
| **museum** | متحف | **festivals** | مهرجانات - احتفالات |
| **website** | موقع إلكتروني | **shelf** | رَفّ |
| **except** | باستثناء - عدا | **buttons** | أزرار |
| **special clothes** | ملابس خاصة | **lighter** | أفتح |
| **well done** | أحسنت | **darker** | أغمق |

### Prepositions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| on stage | على خشبة المسرح | at the side of | على جانب |
| on the weekend | في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع | walk past | يمر بـ - يمشي بجوار |
| on the way home | في الطريق للبيت | in the shadow | في الخلفية |
| at home | في البيت | for a long time | لفترة طويلة |

# Conjugation of verbs

## Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

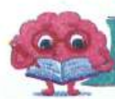
| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| learn | يتعلّم | learned (learnt) | learned (learnt) |
| edit | يُعَدِّل | edited | edited |
| smile | يبتسم | smiled | smiled |

## Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| say | يقول | said | said |
| think | يفكر - يعتقد | thought | thought |
| take photos | يلتقط صور | took photos | taken photos |
| speak | يتحدث | spoke | spoken |

## Definitions تعريفات SB Student's Book

| | |
|---|---|
| ***advertisement*** | : this tells people about an event, so they want to see it |
| ***choir*** | : a group of people who sing together |
| ***costumes*** | : special clothes that people wear at festivals or on stage |
| ***edit*** | : to change photos to make them better |
| ***exhibition*** | : a group of artworks in one place for people to see |
| ***photography*** | : the activity or job of taking photographs |
| ***play*** | : a story that you watch at the theater |



Read and learn

# Behind the camera

It was two weeks until the **school show** ❶, and everybody was excited. Everybody **except** ❷ Magdy. "I'm going to play the piano," said Waleed. "The **choir** ❸ is going to sing beautiful songs," said Nesma. "And I'm going to make **costumes** ❹ for the choir," said Dalia. "I've written a funny **play** ❺ !" said Samir.



Magdy was worried. He didn't go to piano lessons, and he didn't like singing. "What am I going to do?" he thought. On the way home, Magdy **walked past** ❻ the museum. There was an advertisement for a photography **exhibition** ❼. A black and white photo showed a man playing the piano on stage, with **the audience** ❽ in the shadow. "That's amazing," thought Magdy. It felt like he was there, listening to the music. At home, Magdy started looking in cupboards. "What are you doing?" asked Mom. "Dad has a good camera, doesn't he? Do you know where it is?" asked Magdy. "Yes," said Mom, taking a box from a **shelf** ❾. "He hasn't used it for a long time. Are you studying photography at school?" "No, but I'll learn!" Magdy said.

Magdy found his dad's photography books. He read about the different **buttons** ❿ on the camera. Then he learned how to edit the photos on the computer to make them lighter or darker. Magdy was excited. On the weekend, his mom and dad took him to a photography exhibition. After the exhibition, they went into the city and Magdy took photos of things he saw. Finally, Magdy spoke to his teacher. "Miss Salwa, I'm worried. I don't like being on stage. I don't like singing or acting, and I can't play an **instrument** ⓫." "Magdy, this is a chance for you to do something you enjoy, to express yourself. Can you think of something?"

❶ عرض مدرسي
❷ باستثناء - عدا
❸ كورال - كورس
❹ أزياء - ملابس
❺ مسرحية
❻ مرّ بـ - مرّ بجوار
❼ معْرَض
❽ الجمهور
❾ رَف
❿ أزرار
⓫ آلة موسيقية

said his teacher. "I know! I could be the photographer! I can be at the side of the stage while the class are performing. Then I can edit the photos for our school website," said Magdy. Miss Salwa smiled and said, "Well done, Magdy. That's a great idea!" The class practiced ⑫ their instruments and learned their lines. On the evening of the show, they were happy and ready to perform ⑬. When each person was on stage, Magdy took photos. Magdy's photos were on the school website the next week. "You're going to be a great photographer ⑭, Magdy," said his dad.

⑫ تمرّن - تدرّب
⑬ يؤدي
⑭ مصوّر

## Activity Book Text

### It was the day after the school show. Magdy's friend Samir was visiting his grandma.

اليوم التالي للعرض المدرسي. كان سمير صديق مجدي يزور جدته.

"Hi, Grandma. I've come to visit you," said Samir.

قال سمير: "مرحبًا ياجدتي. لقد جئت لزيارتك."

"Hello, Samir," said Grandma. "How was the school show? Were you in a play?"

قالت الجدة: "مرحبًا يا سمير كيف كان العرض المدرسي؟ هل كنت في مسرحية؟"

"It was great, Grandma, but I wasn't in a play. Magdy and I don't like acting. Magdy was the photographer for the school show, but my job was better than that. I helped Mr Ibrahim make the props," said Samir excitedly.

قال سمير بحماس: "كان رائعًا ياجدتي لكنني لم أكن في المسرحية. أنا ومجدي لا نحب التمثيل. كان مجدي هو المصور للعرض المدرسي ولكن وظيفتي كانت أفضل من ذلك. لقد ساعدت الأستاذ إبراهيم في صنع الركائز (الديكور)."

"What are props?" asked Grandma.

سألت الجدة: "ما هي الركائز؟"

"Props are the things that actors need on stage to make the play look real," said Samir. "If the play is about a family at home in the living room, you need some furniture - like a couch, a lamp, or some pictures for the wall. Sometimes we get the things we need from parents. But sometimes we make them!"

قال سمير: "الركائز هي الأشياء التي يحتاجها الممثلون على خشبة المسرح لأداء المسرحية. فمثلاً إذا كانت المسرحية تدور أحداثها حول عائلة في المنزل في غرفة المعيشة، فأنت بحاجة







إلى بعض الأثاث مثل أريكة أو مصباح أو بعض الصور للحائط. وفي بعض الأحيان نحصل على الأشياء التي نحتاجها من الوالدين ولكن في بعض الأحيان نصنعها."

"You make them?" said Grandma, looking surprised.

قالت الجدة وهي تبدو مندهشة: "أنتم تصنعوها؟"

"Yes, I love making things, Grandma. We use wood, cardboard, colored paper ..... anything! My teacher Mr Ibrahim is very good at making things and he shows me what to do," explained Samir.

قال سمير موضحًا: "نعم، أحب صنع الأشياء ياجدتى. نستخدم الخشب والكرتون والورق الملون ... أي شئ! فمُعلمي الأستاذ إبراهيم جيد جدًا فى صنع الأشياء وشرح لي ما يجب عليّ أن أفعل."



"That sounds exciting, Samir. I'd like to see some of the things you made," said Grandma.

قالت الجدة: "هذا يبدو مثيرًا ياسمير. أود أن أرى بعض الأشياء التي صنعتها."

"That's easy," said Samir. "Magdy put his photos on the school website. I'll get my phone and I'll show you!"

قال سمير: "هذا سهل. لقد وضع مجدي صوره على موقع المدرسة. سأُحضِر هاتفي وسأعرضُها لك!"

## Exercises on Lesson 7

### 1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

**Mom** : What are you going to do in the next school ❶ .................... ?

**Magdy** : I'm worried. I don't go to piano lessons, and I don't like singing.

**Mom** : When is the show?

**Magdy** : It's in two weeks.

**Mom** : I have an idea for you. What about taking photos of the show for the school ❷ .................... ?

**Magdy** : Great idea! I like ❸ .................... very much. I will ask dad for his camera. I also have good skills on how to ❹ .................... the photos on the computer to make them lighter or darker.

**Mom** : Good luck, dear!

**Magdy** : Thanks, mom. Finally, I have the chance to express myself.

### 2 Choose the correct answer:



1. The (advertisement - show - competition) tells people about an event, so they want to see it.





2. The (choir - team - audience) is a group of people who sing together.
3. The (uniform - coat - costumes) are special clothes that people wear at festivals or on stage.
4. He can (express - edit - enter) photos well. He can change them to make them better.
5. The (competition - exhibition - animation) is a group of artworks in one place for people to see.
6. (Photography - Painting - Acting) is the activity or job of taking photographs.
7. The (film - movie - play) is a story that you watch at the theater.
8. The (students - audience - parents) are people who watch a show at a theater or cinema.

## 3 Read the following text and answer the questions:

Kareem and his family went to a photography exhibition last week. He saw many colorful photos there. He bought some photography books, too. He read about different kinds of cameras. He took many photos with his camera. He learned how to edit the photos on the computer to make them lighter or darker. He put his photos on the school website. He was very excited.

### A Choose the correct answer:

1. Kareem learned how to (edit - read - play - sing) the photos on the computer.
2. Kareem put his photos on the school (magazine - website - paper - board).

### B Answer these questions:

3. Where did Kareem and his family go last week? ▶ ................................ .
4. What did Kareem buy? ▶ ................................................................ .

## 4 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. Magdy's job - was - show - What - at - the?

▶ ................................................................................................ ?

2. piano - the - play - to - going - I'm .

▶ ............................................................ .

3. is - The choir - to - going - beautiful songs - sing.

▶ ............................................................ .

4. play - funny - a - written - I've !

▶ ............................................................ !

5. an - can't - instrument - I - play.

▶ ............................................................ .

6. a - good - has - Dad - camera.

▶ ............................................................ .

7. at school - photography - studying - you - Are ?

▶ ............................................................ ?

8. I - stage - being - like - on - don't.

▶ ............................................................ .

9. the photos - can - edit - I - for - website - our school.

▶ ............................................................ .

10. like - I - don't - or acting - singing.

▶ ............................................................ .

11. a great - photographer - to - be - You're - going.

▶ ............................................................ .

12. borrowed - Magdy - camera - dad's - his.

▶ ............................................................ .

## 5 Write an email to your friend Ramez:

Tell him about your favorite hobbies and when you practice them. Your email address is ayman@school.net, and your friend's email address is ramez@yahoo.com.

From:

To:

Subject:

............................................................

............................................................





## Unit 1 Test 1




نصا الاستماع موجودان آخر الكتاب.

### 1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (4Ms)



1. There is a big art ( concert - exhibition - meeting - interview) in the city museum today.
2. People can try junk ( food - collage - modeling - pottery) and build a rocket or a car.
3. People can use recycled ( cloth - clay - plastic - wood) to design their own clothes.
4. We can use beads to make beautiful ( jewelry - bottles - lids - cars).

### 2 Listen and answer the questions: (2Ms)



1. What is Anish Kapoor's job?

 ▶ ............................................................................................................ .

2. Where can you see the sculpture Tall Tree and the Eye?

 ▶ ............................................................................................................ .

### 3 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue: (4Ms)

**Nour** : Have you heard about the ❶ ........................, Alia?
**Alia** : No. What is it about?
**Nour** : The competition is for any kind of ❷ ........................ project. I'd like to enter.
**Alia** : What are you going to make?
**Nour** : My favorite activity is ❸ ........................ . I paint every day. What about you?
**Alia** : I prefer sculpture and junk ❹ .................................... .
**Nour** : What models can you make?
**Alia** : I can make models for cars, rockets and ships.

## 4 Read the following text and then answer the questions below: (4Ms)

Computers are very important in our life. Today, computers are used everywhere. They are used for animation. They are used in banks to store information about people's money. Secretaries use them in offices to write letters. Factories use computers in robots that can do dirty and dangerous work. Most books and newspapers are made with the help of computers. Computers are used to help planes to take off and land. They are also used in hospitals to help doctors to examine their patients. In the future, students won't go to schools. They will be able to learn from computers at home.

### A Choose the correct answer:

1. Computers are used in (banks - hospitals - factories) to help doctors.
2. The underlined word "them" refers to (computers - secretaries - letters).

### B Answer these questions:

3. How are computers important in factories? ▶ ................................ .
4. Who uses computers to write letters? ▶ ................................ .

## The Reader - A Wonderful Surprise

## 5 A- Read and write T (True) or F (False): (4Ms)

1. Asser saw his mom at the school gates. (      )
2. The children's Grandma took them to her house after school. (      )

### B Answer the following questions:

3. What did Asser do when he saw his Grandma?

▶ ........................................................................................ .

4. Why could Mayar read the book by herself?

▶ ........................................................................................ .

## 6 Choose the correct answer: (6Ms)

1. You could use a (computer - cloth - clay - cardboard) to make an animation.
2. I can (find - finding - finds - found) things for outdoor art when I go for a walk.
3. If it starts to rain, (using - use - used - uses) an umbrella.
4. Ahmed can (hear - smell - taste - see) the sound of the rockets.
5. Mona makes her jewelry by using colored (beads - bottles - sculptures - leaves).
6. When she goes to the beach, she (take - took - takes - would take) a sunhat.

## 7 Order the words to make a correct sentence: (2Ms)

1. messy - getting - Do - your hands - like - you?

▶ ........................................................................ .

2. outdoor - sculptures - good - Stainless steel - is - for.

▶ ........................................................................ .

## 8 Write a paragraph of (60) words using the following elements: (4Ms)

**"My school day"**

▶ Ideas to help you: **get up early – wash – breakfast – by bus – study – different subjects – break – library – return – home – afternoon**

........................................................................

........................................................................

........................................................................

........................................................................

........................................................................

........................................................................



Theme (1)
I discover myself

Relaxing at home

# Home is where the heart is

# يكون البيت حيث يكون القلب



# Unit 2

In this unit I will ....

- understand and use words for free-time activities.
- understand and use the first conditional.
- listen and understand people explaining their opinions.
- read and understand a science-fiction story.
- understand and use phrasal verbs.
- write an instructional guide.
- use definitions to explain new words.
- read and understand a mystery story.

## Objectives

| | |
|---|---|
| Vocabulary | **Activities:** do push-ups, play chess, play the violin, swap comic books, watch cartoons<br>**Appliances and electricity:** appliance, blade, blend, blender, candle, electric stove, electric car, games console, hairdryer, invention, interactive whiteboard, laptop, lighting, microwave oven, mixer, motor, refrigerator, smoothie<br>**Phrasal verbs:** clean up, hang up, mop up, pick up, put away, put out, tidy up<br>**Other words:** brick, broke down, change (the car battery), childlike, curious, fix the car, great-grandmother, heat food, iron the clothes, milkshake, programmed, shocked, vaccine<br>Words related to caring for animals: attention, collar, claws, furry, sharpen, stroke, vaccinations |
| Language | **First conditional:** *If it's hot tomorrow, I'll make a smoothie.*<br>**Phrasal verbs:** *I think we need to clean up the kitchen.* |
| Reading | A description of a room; an information text about an appliance; a story about robots in the future; a story about a power outage; a story about a special house |
| Writing | A short description of a room; rules on keeping everybody safe at home; an instructional care guide for a pet; a paragraph about your home |
| Speaking | Describe what you have in your room; discuss appliances; retell a story |
| Listening | A dialog about a family organizing their chores |
| Life skills | **Problem solving:** how to care for a pet<br>**Science appreciation:** learning about appliances |
| Values | **- Respect** **- Responsibility** |
| Issues and challenges | **- Citizenship** |
| Integrated cross-curriculum topics | **Science:** electrical appliances and inventions |

## Lesson 1 My new room



### Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



**watch cartoons** يشاهد أفلام كرتون



**do push-ups** يقوم بتمارين الضغط



**swapping comic books** تبادُل القصص المصورة





**hobbies** هوايات



**apartment** شقة



**sporty** شخص رياضي



**play chess** يلعب شطرنج



**play the violin** يعزف على الكمان

### Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

#### Adjectives

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| light | لطيفة | awesome | رائع - مدهش |
| comfortable | مريحة | fantastic | رائع - مدهش |
| funny | مَرِح - مُسلي | so happy | سعيد جدًا |
| favorite | مُفضَّل | much better | أفضل بكثير |
| tired | مُتعَب - مُرهَق | quite difficult | صعب إلى حدٍ ما |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **PCs** | أجهزة حاسوب (كمبيوتر) | **volleyball** | الكرة الطائرة |
| **computer games** | ألعاب الكمبيوتر | **chess club** | نادي الشطرنج |
| **noise** | ضوضاء - ضجيج | **board games** | ألعاب لوحية |
| **musical instrument** | آلة موسيقية | **luckily** | لحسن الحظ |
| **get bored with** | يشعر بالملل من | **size** | حجم - مقاس |
| **especially** | خاصةً - خصوصًا | **space** | مساحة - فراغ |

# Conjugation of verbs

## Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| listen | يستمع | listened | listened |
| watch | يشاهد | watched | watched |
| share ..... with ..... | يتشارك ..... مع | shared ..... with | shared ..... with ..... |
| move into | ينتقل إلى | moved into | moved into |
| practice | يتدرّب - يتمرّن | practiced | practiced |
| chat | يدردش | chatted | chatted |
| swap | يتبادل | swapped | swapped |

## Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| read | يقرأ | read | read |
| do | يفعل | did | done |
| get bored | يمل - يشعر بالملل | got bored | got bored |
| get stronger | يُصبح أقوى | got stronger | got stronger |

### Did you know? هل تعلم؟

Egyptian families are getting smaller! Today, an average family has three or four people in one family home. In 2000, it was seven!

تتناقص أعداد أفراد العائلات المصرية بشكل مستمر! تضم الأسرة المتوسطة الآن ثلاثة أو أربعة أفراد في منزلٍ عائليٍّ واحد. في عام 2000، كان عدد الأفراد في كل منزل عائليٍّ سبعة!

### Did you know? هل تعلم؟

One of the first cartoons was made in the early 1900s in France. It features a simple stick person moving!

تم إنتاج إحدى أولى أفلام الرسوم المتحركة في أوائل القرن العشرين في فرنسا. وكان هذا الفيلم يعرض شخصًا على شكل عصا بسيطة يتحرك!



Read and learn



## My fantastic bedroom

by Seleem



We moved into ❶ a new apartment ❷ a month ago, and I'm so happy because I have a new bedroom!

I love my new room. It's a very light ❸ and comfortable room. I share it with my brother, Maged, and we're good friends.

We have a long desk for our PCs ❹ so we can do our homework in our bedroom. That's much better than doing it in the living room! There's too much noise ❺ there from our little sister and the TV! When we finish our homework, we can play computer games with our friends – that's a lot of fun! My favorite game is a building game ❻. We watch cartoons ❼ with our friends, too.

I also love swapping comic books ❽, and like reading them in bed. My friends and I swap them once a week and talk about them.

I'm learning to play the violin ❾ at the moment, and I practice a lot. I'm not very good yet, so sometimes my brother gets bored ❿ with my music, especially when he's tired! He's very sporty ⓫ and plays a lot of volleyball, so he does push-ups ⓬ in our room – he often does 30 in the evening!

Maged and I have many of the same friends. They're all awesome ⓭. Before we moved, we only chatted to ⓮ them online, but it's better now that we have a bigger bedroom. They come to our house to talk in our room.

One of our friends, Sherif, is an amazing chess ⓯ player. We both play chess at the school chess club. Chess is quite difficult for me, but, luckily, Sherif is helping me.

Maged and I like board games ⓰. We play them with our friends in our bedroom and with our family in the living room!

Mom and Dad's bedroom is next to ours. Their bedroom is the same size ⓱ as ours, but they have their own bathroom. I prefer our bedroom – my favorite thing about it is that we have space for our hobbies ⓲ and for our friends!

1. انتقل إلى
2. شقة
3. لطيفة
4. أجهزة كمبيوتر
5. الكثير من الإزعاج (الضوضاء)
6. لعبة بناء
7. أفلام رسوم متحركة
8. تبادل القصص المصورة
9. الكمان (آلة موسيقية)
10. يمل – يضجر
11. شخص رياضي
12. تمارين الضغط
13. رائع
14. يدردش مع
15. شطرنج
16. الألعاب اللوحية
17. حجم – مقاس
18. هوايات

## Exercises on Lesson 1

### 1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

**building – cartoons – swapping – game – computer**

When my brother and I finish our homework, we can play ❶ .................. games with our friends - that's a lot of fun! My favorite ❷ .................. is a building game. We watch ❸ ...................... with our friends, too. I also like ❹ .................. comic books, and like reading them in bed. My friends and I swap them once a week and talk about them.

### 2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

**Mazen** : Hi, Seleem! I heard you moved into a new ❶ ...................... . Congratulations!

**Seleem** : Thanks, Maged! I love my new bedroom. It's very light and ❷ .................................... .

**Mazen** : How about your brother's room?

**Seleem** : My brother, Maged, and I ❸ ...................... the same room. We're good friends.

**Mazen** : What do you have in your bedroom?

**Seleem** : We have a long desk for our PCs, so we can do our homework in our bedroom. That's much better than doing it in the living room! There's too much ❹ ...................... there from our little sister and the TV!

**Mazen** : I hope you enjoy your time in it.

**Seleem** : Thanks, Maged!

### 3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

**sporty – bored – practice – push-ups – violin**

Hi! I'm Seleem. I'm learning to play the ❶ ...................... at the moment, and I ❷ ...................... a lot. I'm not very good yet, so sometimes my brother gets bored with my music, especially when he's tired! He's very ❸ ...................... and plays a lot of volleyball, so he does ❹ ...................... in our room – he often does 30 in the evening!

## 4 Choose the correct answer:




1. I usually (play chess - swap comic books - watch cartoons) on TV. They're funny! SB
2. I often (do push-ups - play the violin - swap comic books) with my friends so that I have something new to read. SB
3. I (play chess - play the violin - watch cartoons) because my mom says it's good to learn a musical instrument. SB
4. I (do push-ups - play chess - play the violin) in my room because I want to get stronger! SB
5. I (play chess - swap comic books - watch cartoons) with my friend Sherif. He's very good and always wins! SB
6. He's very (comfortable - sporty - tired) and plays a lot of volleyball.
7. Maged likes (board - broad - bored) games like chess.
8. Nour plays the (violin - chess - volleyball). She likes music.
9. Mariam loves (comic books - push-ups - cartoons). She likes reading.
10. Asmaa watches (push-ups - cartoons - books). She watches them on TV.
11. Samir always does (cartoons - comic books - push-ups) in his room. He is sporty.
12. Hadeer likes playing (chess - volleyball - violin). It's a board game.
13. Many children (watch - play - do) cartoons on TV.
14. Hazem (makes - plays - does) push-ups. He often does 30 in the evening!
15. Doha likes to (play - swap - work) comic books with her friends.
16. Nader always (does - visits - plays) chess with his friends. He likes thinking games.

## 5 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. moved - apartment - into - We - a new.

▶ ........................................................................................ .

2. is - an - Sherif - amazing - player - chess.

▶ ........................................................................................ .

3. and I - many of - have - friends - Maged - the same.

▶ ................................................................................ .

4. you - do - What - your - like about - bedroom?

▶ ................................................................................ ?

5. watch - with - cartoons - We - friends - our.

▶ ................................................................................ .

6. love - books - I - swapping - comic.

▶ ................................................................................ .

7. brother - My - does - our room - push-ups - in.

▶ ................................................................................ .

8. difficult - is - quite - Chess - me - for.

▶ ................................................................................ .

9. and - board - I - like - Maged - games.

▶ ................................................................................ .

10. your bedroom - What - you - do - in - do?

▶ ................................................................................ ?

## 6 Write an email to your friend Merna:

Tell her that you moved into a new apartment; you are happy because you have a new bedroom. Your email address is gameela@yahoo.com, and your friend's email address is merna@gmail.com.

From:

To:

Subject:

................................................................................

................................................................................

................................................................................



## Lesson 2 Language

### Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



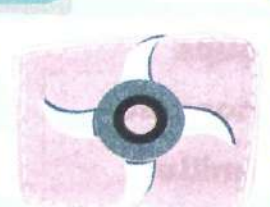
**appliance**
جهاز كهربائي



**machine**
آلة




**motor**
مُحرِّك - مُوتور



**blade**
نَصْل - شفرة



**invent**
يخترع



**invention**
اختراع



**vaccine**
لَقاح – مصل



**heat (v)**
يُسَخِّن



**blender**
خلاط



**refrigerator**
ثلاجة



**toaster**
محمصة خُبْز كهربائية



**hairdryer**
مُجَفِّف شعر



**games console**
وحدة التحكم في الألعاب



**laptop**
حاسوب محمول



**milkshake**
مخفوق الحليب



**smoothie**
عصير مخفوق

## Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **article** | مقال | **scientist** | عالِم |
| **kitchen** | مطبخ | **medicine** | دواء |
| **soups** | أنواع مختلفة من الشوربة | **millions of lives** | ملايين الحيوات |
| **chocolate** | شوكولاتة | **Polish-American** | بولندي أمريكي |
| **vanilla** | فانيليا | **metal** | معدن |
| **strawberries** | فراولة | **over the years** | على مرّ السنين |
| **drink (n)** | مشروب | **for the first time** | لأول مرة |

## Adjectives

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| useful | مفيد - نافع | sharp | حاد |
| amazing | مدهش - مذهل | different | مختلف |
| delicious | لذيذ - شهيّ | the best | الأفضل - الأحسن |

## Conjugation of verbs

### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| invent | يخترع - يبتكر | invented | invented |
| blend | يخلط - يمزج | blended | blended |
| heat | يُسَخِّن | heated | heated |
| call | يدعوا - يُسَمِّي | called | called |
| turn | يلفّ - يدور | turned | turned |
| add | يُضيف | added | added |
| move | يُحَرِّك - يتحرك | moved | moved |
| save | يُنقِذ | saved | saved |
| use | يستخدم - يستعمل | used | used |
| change | يُغَيِّر - يتغيّر | changed | changed |
| stop | يتوقف - يُوقِف | stopped | stopped |
| chop | يُقَطِّع | chopped | chopped |

## Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| put | يضع | put | put |
| know | يعرف - يعلم | knew | known |
| think | يفكّر - يعتقد | thought | thought |
| make | يجعل - يصنع | made | made |
| get sick | يَمْرَض | got sick | got sick |

## Definitions تعريفات SB Student's Book

| | |
|---|---|
| *appliance* | : an object that is useful |
| *invention* | : something that someone has made for the first time |
| *motor* | : a part of a machine that makes something move |
| *vaccine* | : a type of medicine that stops you getting ill |
| *milkshake* | : a drink that is often chocolate or vanilla |
| *smoothie* | : a drink made of blended fruits or sometimes vegetables |

## Read and learn

### Amazing appliances



Karim

1. I think the **blender** ❶ is the best kitchen **appliance** ❷! If it's hot tomorrow, I'll make a **smoothie** ❸ with fruit and ice!

2. I use it for making milkshakes with my mom. My mom uses it to make delicious soups, too.

3. Did you know a Polish-American man called Stephen Poplawski **invented** ❹ the blender in 1922? He put a sharp **blade** ❺ in the bottom of a tall glass. When the blade turns, it **chops** ❻ the food. He added a small motor. The motor turned the blade, which **blended** ❼ the food together. He used his new **invention** ❽ to make milkshakes.

❶ خلّاط
❷ جهاز كهربائي
❸ عصير مخفوق
❹ اخْتَرَع - ابتكر
❺ نَصل - شفرة
❻ يُقطّع
❼ خَلَط - مَزَج
❽ اختراع - ابتكار

**4.** Blenders are also useful in medicine. For example, Dr Jonas Salk was a famous scientist ⑨. In 1953, he used a blender to make a vaccine ⑩. His vaccine has saved millions of lives. People won't get sick ⑪ if they have a vaccine.




⑨ عالِم
⑩ لقاح - مصل
⑪ يَمرَض
⑫ يُسَخِّن

**5.** Nowadays, the blender is a little different from the 1920s. There are blenders made of plastic, glass, and metal. Some blenders can heat ⑫ food, too! Do you have a blender at home? Do you use your blender a lot, or a little? What would you do without your blender in the kitchen?

## The lesson notes

**use ... to** | **use ... for**

**use ... to** —تُتبع بـ→ المصدر — يستخدم ...... لكي

**use ... for** —تُتبع بـ→ **(verb + ing) or (noun)** — يستخدم ...... من أجل

- I use the blender for making milkshakes with my mom.
- Mom uses the blender to make delicious soups, too.
- He used his new invention to make milkshakes.
- He used a blender for making a vaccine.

# Grammar Study



## The First Conditional [ If ] حالة ( If ) الأولى

- **We use the first conditional to talk about future situations. To form it, we use "if" plus the present simple and will plus the infinitive:**

- تُستخدم حالة (**if**) الأولى للحديث عن المواقف المستقبلية. لتكوين الجملة في هذه الحالة، تُستخدم (**if**) + المضارع البسيط و(**will**) + المصدر.

**If + present simple** ——→ **will + infinitive**
**If +** مضارع بسيط ——→ **will +** المصدر

**will + infinitive** ——→ **if + present simple**
**will +** المصدر ——→ **if +** مضارع بسيط

▶ If it's hot tomorrow, I'll make a smoothie.

▶ People won't get sick if they have a vaccine.

■ **We use "can" plus infinitive to express ability. We use "may" plus infinitive when we aren't sure:**

■ تُستخدم "**can**" + المصدر للتعبير عن القدرة. وتُستخدم "**may**" + المصدر عندما لا نكون متأكدين.

▶ If you arrive early, you can get a good seat.

▶ If she hurries, she may catch the train; I'm not sure.

■ **Notice that when the "if" clause is second, we don't use a comma.**

■ لاحظ أنه عندما تأتي جملة (**if**) في الجزء الثاني من الجملة، فإننا لا نضع فاصلة (**comma**).

▶ Dad can take you to school if you ask him now.

**Note that:** **لاحظ أن:**

**الأفعال (.... – will – won't – may) لا بد أن تُتْبَع بالفعل في المصدر، ومصدر الفعل هو أصل الفعل أي هو التصريف الأول للفعل بدون أي إضافات، أي بدون إضافة (s – es – ed – ing – ......).**

## Exercises on Lesson 2

### 1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:



**making - make - milkshakes - appliance - blade**

I think the blender is the best kitchen ❶ .......................... ! If it's hot tomorrow, I'll ❷ .......................... a smoothie with fruit and ice! I use it for ❸ .......................... milkshakes with my mom. My mom uses it to make delicious soups, too. When the ❹ .......................... turns, it chops the food. The motor turned the blade, which blended the food together.





## 2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

**Hend :** Hi, Doha! Guess what? Mom has bought a new modern blender.

**Doha :** Hi, Hend! Wow! That's interesting.

**Hend :** If it's hot tomorrow, I'll make a ❶ ...................... with fruit and ice!

**Doha :** It's really useful.

**Hend :** Do you have a blender at home?

**Doha :** Sure. I use it for making ❷ ......................... with my mom.

**Hend :** I like milkshakes, too. My mom also uses our blender a lot to make delicious soups.

**Doha :** What would you do without a ❸ ........................... in the kitchen?

**Hend :** I don't know. I think if we don't have a blender, we ❹ ...................... make many things.

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

**medicine – won't – heat – will – vaccine**

Blenders are very useful. There are blenders made of plastic, glass, and metal. Some blenders can ❶ ...................... food! Blenders are useful in ❷ ......................, too. In 1953, Dr Jonas Salk, the famous scientist, used a blender to make a vaccine. His ❸ ...................... has saved millions of lives. People ❹ ...................... get sick if they have a vaccine.

## 4 Choose the correct answer: (Vocabulary)

1. The (appliance - vaccine - milkshake) is a drink that is often chocolate or vanilla.
2. The (motor - invention - appliance) is a part of a machine that makes something move.
3. The (vaccine - medicine - invention) is something that someone has made for the first time.





4. The (smoothie - appliance - blade) is a drink made of blended fruits or sometimes vegetables.
5. The (motor - smoothie - appliance) is an object that is useful for us.
6. The (smoothie - vaccine - milkshake) is a type of medicine that stops you getting ill.
7. The blender is a useful (smoothie - vaccine - invention).
8. In the blender, when the (smoothie - blade - milkshake) turns, it chops the food.
9. The (vaccine - medicine - motor) turned the blade, which blended the food together.
10. We (call - heat - invent) our food to eat it. We like it warm.
11. This (milkshake - vaccine - smoothie) has saved millions of lives.
12. The blender is the best kitchen (appliance - medicine - vaccine).

## 5 Choose the correct answer: (Structures)


Student's Book

1. If my hair (gets - will get) wet, I'll use the hairdryer. SB
2. If I put food in the refrigerator, it (is - will be) cold. SB
3. We'll play with the games console if my friends (come - comes) to my house. SB
4. If I (put - to put) bread in the toaster, the bread will be hot. SB
5. She (will - may) use the laptop to do her homework. I'm not sure. SB
6. If it's hot tomorrow, I'll (makes - to make - make) a smoothie with fruit and ice!
7. People (aren't - won't - weren't) get sick if they have a vaccine.
8. If you (arrive - arrives - arrived) early, you can get a good seat.
9. If she hurries, she (is - may - will) catch the train; I'm not sure.
10. Dad can take you to school (but - and - if) you ask him now.
11. I'll make milkshakes if I (had - have - has) milk and strawberries.
12. If I want to play games, I'll (used - uses - use) the games console.
13. I'll make a smoothie if it (is - will be - may be) hot.
14. If she (want - wanted - wants) to make soup, she will use the blender.
15. If he (goes - don't go - doesn't go) to bed now, he may be late for school.
16. He (comes - will come - won't come) with us if he doesn't have free time.





## 6 Read the following text and answer the questions:

Did you know a Polish-American man called Stephen Poplawski invented the blender in 1922? He put a sharp blade in the bottom of a tall glass. When the blade turns, it chops the food. He added a small motor. The motor turned the blade, which blended the food together. He used his new invention to make milkshakes. Nowadays, the blender is a little different from the 1920s. There are blenders made of plastic, glass, and metal. Some blenders can heat food, too!

### A Choose the correct answer:

1. A (Scottish – Irish – Polish-American) man called Stephen Poplawski invented the blender.
2. He put a sharp blade in the (top – bottom – middle) of a tall glass.

### B Answer these questions:

3. Why did Stephen add a motor?
4. How are blenders nowadays different from the 1920s?

## 7 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. is - your - appliance - favorite - Which - kitchen?
▶ ............................................................ ?
2. Blenders - medicine - in - useful - are.
▶ ............................................................ .
3. the - blender - the years - Has - changed - over?
▶ ............................................................ ?
4. was - a - scientist - famous - Dr Jonas.
▶ ............................................................ .
5. you - do - What - use - blender for - the?
▶ ............................................................ ?
6. blenders - food - heat - Some - can!
▶ ............................................................ !
7. you - Do - home - have - a blender - at?
▶ ............................................................ ?
8. a blender - used - to - Dr Jonas - a vaccine - make.
▶ ............................................................ .

# Lesson 3 Explaining your opinion

## Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



**electricity**
الكهرباء



**power socket**
مقبس كهربائي (كُبس)



**extension cable**
كابل تمديد (مُشْتَرَك)



**power outage**
انقطاع التيار الكهربائي



**lighting**
الإنارة - الإضاءة



**interactive whiteboard**
سبورة تفاعلية

## Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **lights** | الأضواء - المصابيح | **transportation** | النقل - المواصلات |
| **the dark** | الظلام | **in my opinion** | من وجهة نظري - في رأيي |
| **electric kettle** | غلاية كهربائية | **strange day** | يوم غريب |
| **electric cars** | سيارات كهربائية | **interesting discussion** | مناقشة شيّقة |
| **bus stations** | محطات الحافلات (الأتوبيسات) | **most useful** | أكثر إفادة - أكثر نفعًا |
| **airports** | مطارات | **free time** | وقت فراغ |

## Conjugation of verbs

### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| explain | يُوَضِّح - يُفَسِّر | explained | explained |
| point | يُشير | pointed | pointed |

Term 1

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| disappear | يختفي | disappeared | disappeared |
| happen | يَحْدُث | happened | happened |
| watch | يشاهد | watched | watched |
| guess | يُخَمِّن | guessed | guessed |
| travel | يسافر | traveled | traveled |
| plan | يُخَطِّط | planned | planned |
| try | يحاول | tried | tried |
| like | يحب | liked | liked |
| love | يحب | loved | loved |
| agree with | يتفق مع | agreed with | agreed with |

## Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| hear | يسمع | heard | heard |
| tell | يُخْبِر | told | told |
| sit | يجلس | sat | sat |
| think | يفكر - يعتقد | thought | thought |
| mean | يعني - يقصد | meant | meant |

## Read and learn

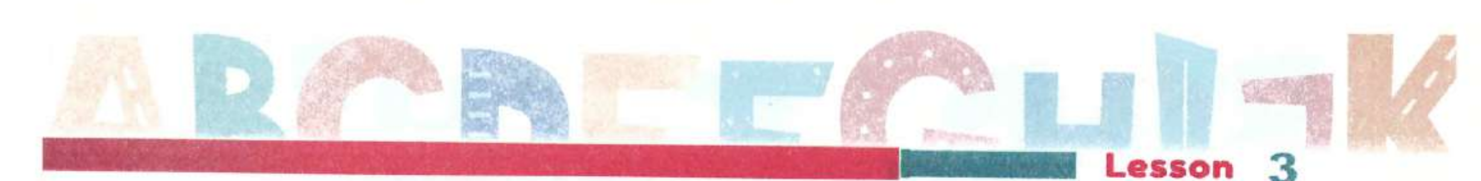
### Mariam's day at school

**Mom** : Hi Mariam, how was your day?

**Mariam** : Oh, hi Mom! It was a strange day, actually. We had a power outage ❶! My class and I were looking at the interactive whiteboard ❷, when suddenly all the information disappeared ❸.

**Mom** : Really? That is strange! What did Miss Amira do?

❶ انقطاع التيار الكهربائي
❷ السبورة التفاعلية
❸ اختفَت





**Mariam** : Well, first she got an extension cable ❹ and tried a different power socket ❺, but that wasn't working either.

**Mom** : Oh no! So, there was no electricity! What happened?

**Mariam** : We couldn't do the lesson Miss Amira planned. So she asked us all to sit in a circle and talk about why electricity is important in our lives.

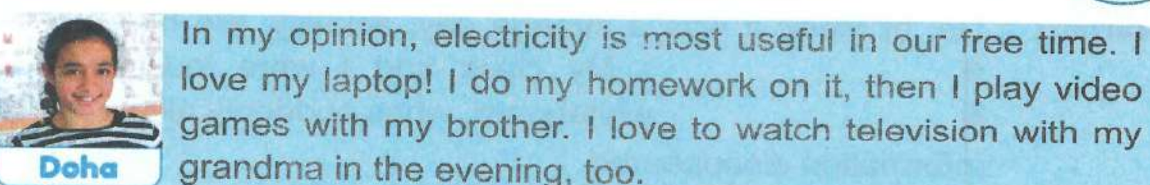
**Mom** : Let me guess – everyone thought it was important for computer games!

**Mariam** : Ha ha! Actually, no. We all had lots of different ideas. It was a really interesting discussion ❻.

❹ كابل تمديد (مُشترَك)
❺ مقبس كهربائي (كُبْس)
❻ مناقشة - نِقاش

## Whose opinion do you agree with most? أي رأي تتفق معه أكثر؟





**Doha**: In my opinion, electricity is most useful in our free time. I love my laptop! I do my homework on it, then I play video games with my brother. I love to watch television with my grandma in the evening, too.

**Khaled**: I know what you mean, but I think electricity is most important for lighting. I don't like the dark, and we need lights in the evening.

**Salma**: I don't agree. I think it's more important in the kitchen. We couldn't use our electric kettle without electricity, or our blender – or our refrigerator!

**Tameem**: What about transportation? Some people have electric cars. And bus stations and airports all need electricity, too.



## Exercises on Lesson 3

### 1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

**electricity – electric – opinion – games – think**

In my ❶ ..............................., electricity is most useful in our free time. I love my laptop! I do my homework on it, then I play video ❷ ........................ with my brother. I love to watch television with my grandma in the evening, too. I ❸ ................................ it's important in the kitchen, too. We couldn't use our electric kettle without ❹ .................................. or our blender – or our refrigerator!

### 2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

**Mom** : Hi Mariam, how was your day?

**Mariam** : Oh, hi Mom! It was a strange day, actually. We had a power ❶ ...............................! My class and I were looking at the ❷ ............................... whiteboard, when suddenly all the information disappeared.

**Mom** : Really? That is strange! What did Miss Amira do?

**Mariam** : Well, first she got an extension ❸ ............................... and tried a different ❹ ........................... socket, but that wasn't working either.

**Mom** : Oh no! So, there was no electricity! What happened?

**Mariam** : We couldn't do the lesson Miss Amira planned.

### 3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

**transportation – electric – opinion – lighting – stations**

I think electricity is most important for ❶ ...................... . I don't like the dark, and we need lights in the evening. It's also important in ❷ ...................... . Some people have ❸ ........................... cars. And bus ❹ ........................ and airports all need electricity, too.





## 4 Choose the correct answer:

1. In my (outage - opinion - extension), electricity is most useful in our free time.
2. I (think - tell - shout) electricity is most important for lighting.
3. We need (socket - nights - lights) in the evening. I don't like the dark.
4. We couldn't use our electric kettle without (electricity - extension - transportation).
5. Some people have (electricity - electric - interactive) cars.
6. Yesterday, we had a (cable - socket - power) outage!
7. Cars, buses, and trains are means of (discussion - transportation - electricity).
8. She got an extension cable and tried a different power (socket - outage - kettle) to get electricity.
9. My class and I were looking at the (extension - power - interactive) whiteboard when the light went out.
10. We boil water in an electric (kettle - car - bus) to make tea.

## 5 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. important - electricity - is - Why?
   ▶ ............................................................ ?
2. games - my brother - video - I - with - play.
   ▶ ............................................................ .
3. Miss - do - What - Amira - did?
   ▶ ............................................................ ?
4. a - is - power - What - outage?
   ▶ ............................................................ ?
5. lights - need - We - evening - the - in.
   ▶ ............................................................ .

**6.** can't - What things - without - do - we - electricity?

▶ ........................................................................................ ?

**7.** cars - have - people - Some - electric.

▶ ........................................................................................ .

**8.** stations - Bus - airports - and - electricity - need.

▶ ........................................................................................ .

## 6 Write a paragraph of (60) words using the following elements:

**"How is electricity important?"**

▶ Ideas to help you: **lights - electric appliances - interactive whiteboards - computers - free time - stations - airports**

BUS STOP

RUNWAY

........................................................................................

........................................................................................

........................................................................................

........................................................................................

........................................................................................

........................................................................................

........................................................................................

........................................................................................

........................................................................................

........................................................................................

........................................................................................





## Lesson 4 Story: The day the Bills broke down

### Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس





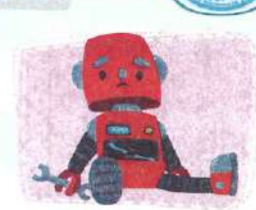
**Bill robot** إنسان آلي اسمه بيل



**terrible** رهيب - فظيع - سيئ



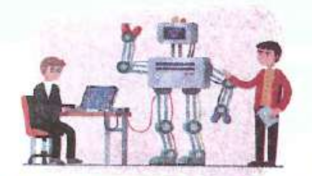
**iron clothes** يكوي الملابس



**break down** يتعطّل



**shocked** مصدوم



**programmed to** مُبَرْمَج على



**battery** بطارية



**chores** الأعمال المنزلية

### Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

#### Adjectives

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| sweet | جميلة – حلوة | awful | مريع - فظيع |
| complicated | مُعَقَّد - صعب | worried | قلق - متوتر |
| ready | جاهز - مُستعِد | too difficult | صعب جدًا |

#### Prepositions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| on Earth | على الكرة الأرضية | wake him up | يوقظوه |
| on this day | في هذا اليوم | wait for | ينتظر (شخصًا - شيئًا) |
| fall to the ground | يسقط على الأرض | go on the internet | يدخل على الإنترنت |
| the lights went out | انطفأت الأنوار | in case | في حال أن - في حالة |



## Unit 2

### Places

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Australia | أستراليا | Egypt | مصر |
| Italy | إيطاليا | Alexandria | الإسكندرية |

### Other words

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| life | حياة | said nothing | لم يقل شيئًا - لم يردّ |
| humans | البشر | pants | بنطلون |
| started normally | بدأ بشكل طبيعي | microwave | مايكرويف |
| noise | ضوضاء - ضجيج | computer engineer | مهندس كمبيوتر |
| suddenly | فجأة | busily | بهمّة - بنشاط |
| certainly | بالتأكيد - بالطبع | normal | عادي - طبيعي |

## Conjugation of verbs

### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| work | يعمل | worked | worked |
| fix | يُصلّح | fixed | fixed |
| fill | يملأ | filled | filled |
| start | يبدأ | started | started |
| iron | يكوي | ironed | ironed |
| learn | يتعلم | learned | learned |
| solve | يحل | solved | solved |

### Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| lie | يرقد - ينام | lay | lain |
| wear | يرتدي | wore | worn |
| fall | يسقط | fell | fallen |
| see | يرى | saw | seen |
| wake up | يستيقظ - يفيق | woke up | woken up |

## The day the Bills broke down!

It's the Year 2089, and life on Earth is sweet! Humans have easy lives because every family has a Bill robot which works 24 hours a day for them. The Bill robots do all their **chores** (1). However, on this day, a year ago, something **terrible** (2) happened.

The day started normally. In Australia, some Bills were **ironing clothes** (3) for their humans to wear to work. In Italy, other Bills were quietly making milkshakes, and others were fixing cars. In Egypt, the Bills were making koshari for the next day's lunch. But then, all over the world, the noise of the robots suddenly stopped. All the Bills suddenly **broke down** (4). They fell to the ground, and their **lights went out** (5).

One family in Alexandria was **shocked** (6) when they saw their Bill lying on the kitchen floor. They tried to wake him up. "Bill!" said Mom, "What happened? We're waiting for our koshari!" Bill said nothing. Hesham, the young son, started crying, "I need a clean **uniform** (7) tomorrow," he said, "And who is going to iron my school pants?" "This is awful! I **programmed** (8) Bill to fix my car and change the battery in it. What am I going to do?" Dad said.

Everyone looked very **worried** (9), but the daughter, Fareeda, said, "We'll just do some chores ourselves, like people did in the past. We'll go on the internet and find out how to do things. That's what Granddad told me people used to do."

The family started trying to learn things from videos. They learned how to use a **blender** (10) and had milkshakes. Mom learned how to use the **microwave** (11) so they could **heat** (12) some food. They didn't really like that because Bill normally made the meals for the family. Dad tried to learn how to fix his car, but it was too difficult. And he certainly didn't understand how to change the car battery – that was

1. الأعمال المنزلية
2. فظيع - سيئ
3. يكوي الملابس
4. تعطل
5. انطفأت الأنوار
6. مصدوم
7. زي موحد
8. برمج
9. قلق
10. خلاط
11. مايكرويف
12. يسخن

very complicated ⓭. Hesham did well! He quickly learned how to iron his own clothes for school!

Luckily, a computer engineer ⓮ solved the problem the next day, and all the Bills started working again. The Bills in Egypt were busily cleaning cars, ready for work on Sunday. Life was normal again. However, the humans are now ready – in case the Bills break down again one day …



⓭ مُعقَّد
⓮ مهندس كمبيوتر

## Exercises on Lesson 4

### 1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

**chores – Humans – robots – broke – terrible**

It's the year 2089, and life on Earth is sweet! ❶ .......................... have easy lives because every family has a Bill robot which works 24 hours a day for them. The Bill robots do all their ❷ .......................... . However, on this day, a year ago, something ❸ .......................... happened. All the Bills suddenly ❹ .......................... down. They fell to the ground, and their lights went out.

### 2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

**Ramy** : Hi, Waleed! Guess what? I have read a story called "The Day The Bills Broke Down".

**Waleed** : Hi, Ramy! What is it about?

**Ramy** : It's a story about ❶ .......................... called the Bills that happens in the year 2089.

**Waleed** : What do the Bills do?

**Ramy** : They do all human's ❷ .......................... . Some Bills were ❸ .......................... clothes for their humans to wear to work. Other Bills were quietly making milkshakes, and others were ❹ .......................... cars.

**Waleed** : Oh! What an easy life!





## 3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

**making – shocked – fixing – ironing – koshari**

The Bills robots do the chores normally. In Australia, some Bills were ❶ .......................... clothes for their humans to wear to work. In Italy, other Bills were quietly ❷ .......................... milkshakes, and others were ❸ ...................... cars. In Egypt, the Bills were making koshari for the next day's lunch. One family in Alexandria was ❹ ...................... when they saw their Bill lying on the kitchen floor. They tried to wake him up. But Bill said nothing.

## 4 Choose the correct answer:

1. (Luckily - Sadly - Awfully), a computer engineer fixed the problem.
2. I (solved - broke down - programmed) the robot to fix my car and change the battery in it.
3. My mom is going to (make - do - fix) koshari for lunch.
4. My father's car broke down. He wanted to (iron - solve - fix) it to go to work.
5. We use the (battery - microwave - light) to heat food.
6. You have to (heat - wear - fill) the car with gas to go to work.
7. I like to make a (milkshake - battery - koshari) using a blender.
8. We usually (heat - cool - iron) clothes before wearing them.
9. We need to (change - iron - program) the car battery. It broke down.
10. To (wear - solve - heat) food, we can use the microwave.

## 5 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. a - Bill - What - do - does?
   ▶ ........................................................................................................?
2. important - were - The Bills - people - the - to.
   ▶ ........................................................................................................ .

3. All the - down - suddenly - broke - Bills.

▶ ........................................................................................ .

4. sweet - is - Earth - on - Life!

▶ ........................................................................................ !

5. do - The Bill robots - chores - the - all.

▶ ........................................................................................ .

6. Bill - programmed - I - my car - fix - to.

▶ ........................................................................................ .

7. do - to - going - I - am - What?

▶ ........................................................................................ ?

8. to use - learned - the microwave - Mom - how.

▶ ........................................................................................ .

## 6 Write an email to your friend Hagar:

Tell her about a story you read called "The Day The Bills Broke Down". It happened in the year 2089. It was about robots and how they will do all the chores for humans in the future. Your email address is omnia@school.net, and your friend's email address is hagar@yahoo.com.

From:

To:

Subject:

........................................................................................

........................................................................................

........................................................................................

........................................................................................

........................................................................................



# Lesson 5 Language

## Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



**chores**
الأعمال (المَهَام) المنزلية



**mop up the water**
يُجَفِّف الماء - يمسح الماء



**hang up the clothes**
يُعَلِّق الملابس



**pick up the books**
يلتقط الكتب (يرفعها من على الأرض)



**clean up the kitchen**
يُنَظِّف المطبخ



**tidy up the room**
يُرَتِّب الغرفة



**put out the garbage**
يُخْرِج القمامة



**put away the dishes**
يضع الأطباق في مكانها المعتاد

## Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **response** | رَد - إجابة | **garbage can** | صندوق القمامة |
| **dining table** | طاولة الطعام | **dirty** | مُتَّسِخ - قذر |
| **messy** | فوضوي - غير مُرَتَّب | **floor** | أرضية الغرفة |
| **full (adj)** | ممتلئ | **shelf** | رَف |

# Grammar Study



## Phrasal verbs

- **A phrasal verb is a verb followed by a preposition, such as up, over, in, on, away.**

- المقصود بمصطلح الـ (phrasal verb) هو الفعل المتبوع بحرف جر. (لاحظ أن معنى الفعل يتغير بتَغيُّر حرف الجر الذي يليه.)

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **look at** | ينظر إلى | **look after** | يعتني بـ |
| **look for** | يبحث عن | **look up** | يبحث عن كلمة في قاموس |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **put out** | يُخْرِج - يطفئ | **put on** | يرتدي |
| **put away** | يضع الشيء في مكانه المعتاد | **put off** | يُؤَجِّل |

- Mom asked me to put away the dishes after washing them up.
- Sarah looks after her little sister when her mom is out.

## Conjugation of verbs

### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| offer | يَعرِض | offered | offered |
| pick up | يلتقط | picked up | picked up |
| clean up | يُنَظِّف | cleaned up | cleaned up |
| mop up | يُجَفِّف - يمسح | mopped up | mopped up |
| tidy up | يُرَتِّب | tidied up | tidied up |



## Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| put away | يضع الشيء في مكانه المعتاد | put away | put away |
| hang up | يُعلّق | hung up | hung up |
| do | يفعل | did | done |

## Exercises on Lesson 5

### 1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

**Saif** : I think we need to clean up the house.

**Omar** : OK. I'll mop up the water on the floor. Can you put ❶ .................. the dishes?

**Saif** : Yes, of course. Can you ❷ .................................. up the books and put them on the shelf, please?

**Omar** : Sure. Don't forget if you ❸ .................................. up your clothes, your bedroom will look better.

**Saif** : That's right. I will also ❹ .................................. up my room.

### 2 Choose the correct answer: (Vocabulary)

1. Mom mops up the (clothes - water - books) on the floor.
2. My sister hangs up the (dishes - clothes - books) after washing them.
3. Mustafa picks up the (floors - books - chores) and puts them on the shelf.
4. Mom always cleans up the (kitchen - clothes - car). It's her favorite room.
5. The children tidy up their (garbage - water - room). They are helpful.
6. I put out the (room - garbage - kitchen) when mom asks me.
7. She puts away the (dishes - room - kitchen) after washing them.



## 3 Choose the correct answer: (Structures) Student's Book

1. I think we need to clean (up - over - in) the kitchen. SB
2. I mop (in - over - up) the water on the floor. SB
3. Can you put (up - away - over) the dishes? SB
4. Can you pick (up - on - in) the books and put them on the shelf, please? SB
5. We have to put (up - out - on) the garbage tonight. SB
6. If you hang (away - out - up) your clothes, your bedroom will look better. SB
7. If I tidy (out - up - over) my room, I may watch a movie. Who knows? SB
8. My new clothes are still in the living room. I'll (put - mop - hang) them up now. SB
9. There are books all over your bedroom floor! I'll (pick - hang - mop) them up. SB
10. Our dining table is really messy. I'll (put - clean - hang) it up. SB
11. The garbage can is full. I'll (put - mop - hang) it out. SB
12. I always (tidy - hang - put) up my room on weekends.
13. Would you like me to (hang - tidy - mop) up the water?
14. I'll (put - mop - hang) out the garbage.

## 4 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. need - kitchen - to - We - the - clean up.
   ▶ ................................................................................ .
2. put out - We - the - have - garbage - to.
   ▶ ................................................................................ .
3. messy - really - is - table - dining - Our.
   ▶ ................................................................................ .
4. dirty - The - kitchen - is - floor.
   ▶ ................................................................................ .
5. garbage - The - can - full - is.
   ▶ ................................................................................ .

6. the - toys - floor - on - are - There.

▶ ................................................................ .

7. the - put - garbage - I'll - out.

▶ ................................................................ .

8. weekends - I - my room - tidy up - on - always.

▶ ................................................................ .

9. dishes - the - put - you - away - Can?

▶ ................................................................ ?

10. juice - is - There - the - on - floor.

▶ ................................................................ .

## 5 Write an email to your friend Salma:

Tell her about the chores you and your family do every weekend. Your email address is marwa@gmail.com, and your friend's email is salma@yahoo.com.

From:

To:

Subject:

................................................................

................................................................

................................................................

................................................................

................................................................

..............................,

..............................

# Lesson 6 Writing an instructional guide

## Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



**attention** اهتمام - انتباه



**stroke** يَرْبُت - يُدلِّك



**sharpen** يسنّ (يجعل الشيء حادًا)



**collar** طَوْق



**claws** مخالب



**furry** ذو فرو – مكسو بالفرو



**vaccinations** تطعيمات



**treatment** علاج

## Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **instructional guide** | دليل إرشادي | **equipment** | مُعِدّات - أدوات |
| **vet** | طبيب بيطري | **scratch post** | عمود خَدْش (تخدش القطط مخالبها فيه) |
| **back** | ظَهْر | **leather** | جِلد |
| **chin** | ذقن | **turtle** | سلحفاة |
| **neck** | رقبة | **soil** | تُربة |
| **couch** | كنبة - أريكة | **heat lamp** | مصباح تدفئة - مصباح حراري |
| **meals** | وجبات | **temperature** | درجة الحرارة |

## Adjectives

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| wooden pole | عمود خشبي | warm | دافئ |
| hard floor | أرضية صلبة | comfortable | مُريح |
| soft hair | شعر ناعم | at different times | في أوقات مختلفة |

# Conjugation of verbs

## Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| stroke | يَرْبِت - يُدلّك | stroked | stroked |
| need | يحتاج | needed | needed |
| look after | يعتني بـ | looked after | looked after |
| care for | يعتني بـ | cared for | cared for |

## Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| sleep | ينام | slept | slept |
| feel | يشعر - يحس | felt | felt |
| bring home | يجلب للبيت | brought home | brought home |
| dig | يحفر | dug | dug |
| get lost | يضل الطريق - يتوه | got lost | got (gotten) lost |
| get sick | يمرض | got sick | got (gotten) sick |

## Read and learn

### Caring for your cat



**How can I make my cat feel at home?**

Give your cat lots of attention ❶ so it feels safe. You should stroke ❷ it. This means that you should move your hand over its back ❸, or under its chin ❹ – cats love this!

❶ اهتمام - انتباه
❷ يَرْبِت – يُدلّك
❸ ظَهْر
❹ ذقن
❺ كنبة - أريكة

**Where do cats like sleeping?**

They like a warm, comfortable bed, but sometimes they just sleep on the couch ❺! Don't wake it up – cats need to sleep for about 15 hours every day!



#### What do cats eat?



They like small meals at different times in the day. Cats shouldn't have much milk to drink. Milk is bad for them. Water is better.

#### What equipment does a cat need?

A cat needs **a scratch post** ❻. This is a strong **wooden pole** ❼ which the cat can **sharpen its claws** ❽ on. Cats also like toys to play with. A **collar** ❾ with the cat's name and address on it is a good idea. If your cat **gets lost** ❿, somebody can bring it home to you.

#### How often should cats go to the vet?

Cats should go to the **vet** ⓫ once a year for **vaccinations** ⓬. These stop them from **getting sick** ⓭. If you look after your cat well, you'll have a new **furry** ⓮ friend in your life!

❻ عمود خَدْش (تخدش القطط مخالبها فيه)
❼ عمود خشبي
❽ تُسن مخالبها (تجعلها حادة)
❾ طَوْق
❿ يضل الطريق - يتوه
⓫ طبيب بيطري
⓬ تطعيمات
⓭ يَمْرَض - المَرَض
⓮ ذو فرو - مكسو بالفرو

## Caring for your turtle



#### What do turtles eat?

- These animals like to eat flowers and plants. You can also buy special **turtle food** ❶.

#### How can I make my turtle feel at home?

- Turtles need a very large **space** ❷ for their home. A bigger turtle needs a bigger space! They need clean **soil** ❸ to **dig in** ❹, too.

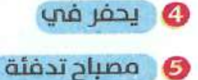
#### What equipment do turtles need?

- They sometimes need a **heat lamp** ❺. This is a special light to keep the turtle nice and warm.

#### Where do turtles sleep?

- Turtles like sleeping in a safe, dark place where the **temperature** ❻ doesn't change.

❶ طعام سلاحف
❷ مساحة
❸ تُربة
❹ يحفر في



❺ مصباح تدفئة
❻ درجة الحرارة





## Tip!

### Use definitions to explain what you mean

- When we are writing, we can use "This is", or "This means that" to explain words to the reader.
- Use "This is" before a noun phrase, for example:
  - A cat needs a scratch post. This is a strong wooden pole which the cat can sharpen its claws on.
- Use "This means that" before a full sentence with a subject and a verb:
  - Stroke it. This means that you should move your hand over its back or under its chin – cats love this!

## Activity Book Text

## Caring for your indoor plants

الاعتناء بالنباتات التي تنمو (تُزرع) داخل المنزل

### Where can I buy an indoor plant?

You can buy indoor plants from supermarkets, florists, and garden, centers. These are stores that sell many different plants. It might be best to buy from a garden center as the assistants know how to look after the plants and they can give you some useful advice. Make sure you know what your plant is called so you can find out more about it.

**أين يمكنني أن أشتري نبات ينمو داخل المنزل؟**

يمكنك شراء النباتات التي تنمو داخل المنزل من السوبر ماركت ومحال الزهور ومراكز الحدائق. تلك هي محلات تبيع العديد من النباتات المختلفة. ربما من الأفضل أن تشتري من مركز الحديقة لأن البائعين هناك يعرفون كيفية الاعتناء بالنباتات ويستطيعون أن يقدموا لك بعض النصائح المفيدة. تأكد أنك تعرف اسم نوع نباتك لتستطيع معرفة المزيد عنه.

### Where should I put my indoor plant?

Some plants need to be in a warm, sunny place with a lot of light, while others prefer a cool place that isn't sunny. Look on the internet to find the best place for your plant. Most plants don't like you to move them. So, find the perfect place and leave it there.





### أين يجب أن أضع النبات الذي ينمو داخل منزلي؟

بعض النباتات تحتاج أن تكون في مكان دافئ ومشمس به الكثير من الضوء بينما تُفضل نباتات أخرى مكان بارد ليس مشمس. ابحث على الانترنت لتعرف أفضل مكان لنباتك. معظم النباتات لا تحب أن تحركها. لذلك قم بإيجاد أفضل مكان واتركها هناك.

### Do plants need food?

Yes! The best time to feed your plant is spring and summer. Feed them with fertilizer. This is special plant food. Read the instructions carefully, because too much fertilizer can be bad for plants.

### هل تحتاج النباتات للطعام؟

نعم! أفضل وقت لإطعام نباتك هو في فصل الربيع والصيف. قم بإطعامها بالأسمدة. السماد هو طعام مميز للنباتات. اقرأ التعليمات بحذر لأن الكثير من السماد يمكن أن يكون ضار بالنبات.

### How often should I water the plant?

Some plants don't need much water and others need more. You can check the internet for more information. If you don't know, it's better to give them too little water than too much.

### كم مرة يجب أن أسقي النبات؟

بعض النباتات لا تحتاج الكثير من المياه بينما تحتاج أخرى لمياه أكثر. يمكنك البحث على الانترنت للحصول على معلومات أكثر. إذا لم تكن تعرف، من الأفضل أن تعطي النبات القليل جدا من المياه وليس الكثير جدا من المياه.

### How should I clean my indoor plant?

Use a soft brush or cotton cloth to dust the leaves. This means that you clean dry dirt from the leaves. For plants with thicker leaves, spray them with water and this will keep them healthy.

### كيف يجب أن أنظف النبات المزروع في منزلي؟

استخدم فرشاة ناعمة أو قطعة قماش قطنية لتزيل الغبار من أوراق النبات. مما يعني أنك تنظف القاذورات الجافة من الأوراق. قم برش النباتات ذات الأوراق السميكة بالمياه فذلك سيحافظ عليهم بصحة جيدة.

### Did you know?

If you keep your plants happy and healthy, they will live for many years.

### هل تعلم؟

إذا حافظت على نباتاتك سعيدة وبصحة جيدة، سوف تعيش لعدة سنوات.







## Exercises on Lesson 6

### 1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

**space – lamp – safe – Turtles – dig**

Turtles like to eat flowers and plants. You can also buy special turtle food. ❶ ........................ need a very large space for their home. A bigger turtle needs a bigger ❷ ........................! They need clean soil to ❸ ........................ in, too. They sometimes need a heat ❹ ........................ . This is a special light to keep the turtle nice and warm. Turtles like sleeping in a safe, dark place where the temperature doesn't change.

### 2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

**Hazem** : Hello, Abdullah! I have a new cat. How can I make my cat feel at home?

**Abdullah** : Hello, Hazem! Give your cat lots of ❶ ........................ so it feels safe. Cats love to be safe!

**Hazem** : What equipment does a cat need?

**Abdullah** : A cat needs a scratch post. This is a strong wooden pole which the cat can ❷ ........................ its claws on.

**Hazem** : How often should cats go to the ❸ ..............................?

**Abdullah** : Cats should go to the vet once a year.

**Hazem** : Why should they go to the vet once a year?

**Abdullah** : To have ❹ ........................ to stop them from getting sick.

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

**collar – This – claws – sharpen – vaccinations**

A cat needs a scratch post. ❶ .............................. is a strong wooden pole which the cat can ❷ .............................. its claws on. Cats also like toys to play with. A ❸ .............................. with the cat's name and address on it is a good idea. If your cat gets lost, somebody can bring it home to you. Cats should go to the vet once a year for ❹ .............................. . These stop them from getting sick.

## 4 Choose the correct answer:




1. Your cat needs a vaccination. (This means that - This is) a treatment from the vet to stop it getting sick. SB
2. Cats are very furry. (This means that - This is) they have a lot of soft hair. SB
3. Cats need attention. (This means that - This is) they need their owners to be interested in them. SB
4. You should buy your cat a collar. (This means that - This is) a long thin piece of leather to wear around its neck. SB
5. A cat needs a scratch post. (This means that - This is) a strong wooden pole which the cat can sharpen its claws on.
6. You should stroke your cat. (This means that - This is) you should move your hand over its back or under its chin – cats love this!

## 5 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. do - Where - sleep - turtles?
   ▶ ..................................................................................................?
2. equipment - What - a - does - need - cat?
   ▶ ..................................................................................................?





3. go - should - every year - to - Cats - the vet.

▶ ............................................................ .

4. like - comfortable - a warm, - Cats - bed.

▶ ............................................................ .

5. scratch - needs - a - A cat - post.

▶ ............................................................ .

6. like - Cats - to - toys - with - play.

▶ ............................................................ .

7. cats - the vet - How often - go - to - should?

▶ ............................................................ ?

8. like - flowers - to eat - Turtles - and - plants.

▶ ............................................................ .

9. eat - do - What - turtles?

▶ ............................................................ ?

10. turtles - need - do - What - equipment?

▶ ............................................................ ?

**6** **Write a paragraph of (60) words using the following elements:**

**"Caring for your turtles"**

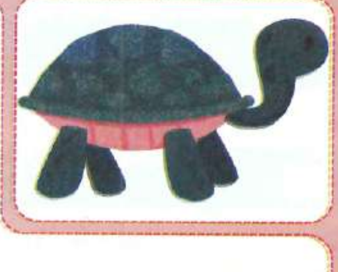
**▸ Ideas to help you:** **eat - flowers and plants - need - large space - clean soil - heat lamp - warm - sleep - safe**

............................................................

............................................................

............................................................

............................................................



............................................................

............................................................

............................................................

Term 1

# Lesson 7 Story: The special house



## Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس


**feel curious** يشعر بالفضول


**spare room** غرفة إضافية - غرفة احتياطية


**bricks** طوب


**stone** حجارة - حجر


**shocked** مصدوم


**great-grandmother** الجدة الكبرى


**great memories** ذكريات رائعة


**childhood** الطفولة

## Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **on school vacation** | في العُطلة المدرسية | **feel bored** | يشعر بالملل |
| **at home** | في المنزل | **underneath** | تحت – أسفل |
| **one morning** | في صباح أحد الأيام | **birthday card** | بطاقة عيد ميلاد |
| **kitten** | قطة صغيرة | **called them downstairs** | نادى عليهما لينزلا للأسفل |
| **hole** | حفرة - فتحة | **growing up** | النشأة |
| **wall** | حائط | **in a child's writing** | بخط طفل |

## Adjectives

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| special | خاص | bored | شاعر بالملل |
| interesting history | تاريخ مثير للاهتمام | different color | لون مختلف |
| dangerous | خطير | glad | سعيد - مسرور |

# Conjugation of verbs

## Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| jump off | يقفز من على | jumped off | jumped off |
| pull | يجر - يسحب | pulled | pulled |
| look | يبدو - ينظر | looked | looked |
| guess | يخمن | guessed | guessed |
| live | يعيش | lived | lived |

## Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| put | يضع | put | put |
| find | يجد | found | found |
| build | يبني | built | built |
| tell | يُخبر | told | told |
| hear | يسمع | heard | heard |
| feel | يشعر - يحس | felt | felt |
| run | يجري | ran | run |
| go up | يصعد | went up | gone up |
| grow up | يكبُر - ينشأ - يتربى | grew up | grown up |

## Definitions تعريفات SB Student's Book

| | |
|---|---|
| *brick* | : a small block for building |
| *curious* | : interested, feeling you want to know more |
| *great-grandmother* | : the mother of your grandparent |
| *shocked* | : very surprised |
| *spare* | : a room that is used for visitors or to put things in |



## Read and learn

### The special house



Sameh and Nadine were on school vacation ❶ at home with their parents.

One morning, Sameh was in the living room, playing with his new kitten ❷. Suddenly, the kitten jumped off ❸ the chair and ran through a small hole ❹ in the wall! Sameh put his hand through the hole to get her, but all he could feel was some paper. He pulled the paper – it was very old. On it, there was a message in a child's writing: Hello, I'm Monira! I live here. Sameh felt very curious ❺.

The next day, it was raining. Sameh and his sister, Nadine, were feeling bored.

"Let's go up and look in the spare room ❻," Sameh said.

In the spare room, they found some old boxes. Sameh looked in one of the boxes and found a little house and a doll ❼. The doll was beautiful, and underneath ❽, there was a birthday card: *To Monira on your birthday, much love, Grandma.*

Just then, their Dad called them downstairs ❾.

"Dad!" said Sameh. "Who is Monira?". Dad looked shocked ❿.

"Why are you asking that?" he said.

"Look at this doll and this card!" replied Sameh.

"I don't believe it!" said Dad, looking at the things. "Let me tell you about the history of this house. It was built from bricks ⓫ and stone in the 1950s. My grandma – your great-grandmother ⓬ – lived here with her mom, dad, and five brothers and sisters."

"Wow! Do you think the house was very small for them?" said Nadine.

"Yes," said Dad. "There were eight people and only three bedrooms!"

❶ عطلة مدرسية
❷ قطة صغيرة
❸ يقفز من على
❹ حفرة - فتحة
❺ فضولي
❻ غرفة إضافية - غرفة احتياطية
❼ دمية
❽ تحت - أسفل
❾ للأسفل - للطابق السفلي
❿ مصدوم
⓫ طوب
⓬ الجدة الكبرى





"Do you think they were happy?" asked Sameh.

"I think they were very happy, just like we are" said Dad.

"But is the house different now?" asked Nadine.

"Well," said Dad, "not really. The walls are a different color, but I think that's all. I'm **glad** (13) it hasn't changed because I have such great **memories** (14) of growing up here too."

"But you still haven't told us who Monira is!" said Sameh.

"Well, you already know her," said Dad. "Monira was your great-grandmother – Granddad's mom! I **guess** (15) you have never heard her first name before.

The things that you found are from her **childhood** (16). I'm so happy we have them! Thank you two!"

(13) سعيد - مسرور
(14) ذكريات
(15) يُخَمِّن
(16) طفولة

## Exercises on Lesson 7



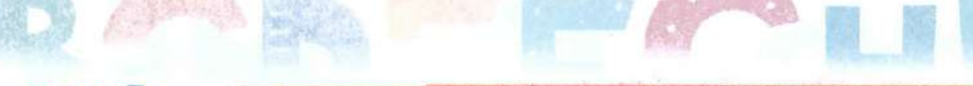
### 1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

**curious – hole – vacation – spare – bricks**

Sameh and Nadine were on school (1) .................................... at home with their parents. That old house was built from (2) .................................... and stone. One morning, Sameh was in the living room, playing with his new kitten. Suddenly, the kitten jumped off the chair and ran through a small (3) .................................... in the wall! Sameh put his hand through the hole to get her, but all he could feel was some paper. He pulled the paper. It was very old. It was a message. Sameh felt very (4) .................................... .

### 2 Choose the correct answer:

1. When someone is (curious - shocked - bored), this means they are interested, feeling they want to know more.





2. A (brick - spare - wall) is a small block for building.
3. When someone is (special - bored - shocked), this means they are very surprised.
4. Your (great-grandmother - great-granddad) is the mother of your grandparent.
5. The (brick - spare - hole) room is a room that is used for visitors or to put things in.
6. This house was built from (bricks - rooms - paper) and stone.
7. He is very (surprised - shocked - curious). He wants to know everything.
8. I was (curious - interesting - shocked) when I heard that Mr Hisham was dead. I couldn't believe that.
9. We have a (paper - spare - hole) room in our house to put old things in.
10. Our grandpa always tells us about many of his (memories - bricks - stones). He has been to so many interesting places.
11. When I (go up - grow up - jump off), I want to be a doctor.
12. Mom tells us that her (vacation - childhood - job) was happy. She was very happy when she was a child.

## 3 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. the message - is - What - story - the - of?

▶ ............................................................................................................ ?

2. curious - very - felt - Sameh.

▶ ............................................................................................................ .

3. beautiful - doll - The - was.

▶ ............................................................................................................ .



4. happy - you - Do - they - were - think?

▶ ................................................................................?

5. card - was - a - There - birthday.

▶ ................................................................................ .

6. the wall - in - a message - found - Sameh.

▶ ................................................................................ .

## 4 Write a paragraph of (60) words using the following elements:

### "The history of your family home"

**Ideas to help you:**

- how old your home is.
- who has lived there.
- how your home has changed.



................................................................................
................................................................................
................................................................................
................................................................................
................................................................................
................................................................................
................................................................................
................................................................................
................................................................................
................................................................................
................................................................................
................................................................................

## Unit 2 Test 2




نصا الاستماع موجودان آخر الكتاب.

### 1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (4Ms)



1. Selim's father bought a new (garden - apartment - villa - house).
2. They moved into the new apartment last (week - month - year - day).
3. Selim's (bedroom - living room - dining room - kitchen) is very comfortable and light.
4. Selim loves (playing - watching - moving - swapping) comic books.

### 2 Listen and answer the questions: (2Ms)



1. What did Stephen Poplawski invent in 1922?
   ▶ ..................................................................................................... .
2. What did he use his invention to?
   ▶ ..................................................................................................... .

### 3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box: (4Ms)

**electricity – appliances – electric – lighting – dark**

Electricity is very important in our life. We use it for ❶ ............................ our houses. We need lights in the evening. We can use it in our kitchens. Blenders, refrigerators and kettles are all ❷ ............................ which need ❸ ............................ to work. We also use electricity in transportation. Some people have ❹ ............................ cars. Bus stations and airports need electricity, too.

### 4 Read the following text and answer the questions: (4Ms)

It's hard to believe that only just over a century ago, there was no electric light to switch on. People used candles, gas and oil lamps to light their homes, and to work and study.

The electric light bulb was invented in 1879 by Thomas Edison. He invented many other useful things, but the electric light bulb was the most important. He also invented things that helped other people develop their own inventions.





Edison was a clever inventor. However, when he was a child, his teachers thought he was stupid because he asked too many questions. His mother said that he didn't ask questions because he was stupid, but because he wanted to know how things worked. She taught him at home. Edison worked so hard day and night that we owed him a lot until now.

**A Choose the correct answer:**

1. Edison learned from his (teachers - mother - father - grandma).
2. The underlined word "century" means (1000 years - 100 years - 10 years - 50 years).

**B Answer these questions:**

3. What's Edison's most important invention?

▶ ..............................................................................................................

4. Find from the passage the opposite of: intelligent - turn off.

▶ ..............................................................................................................

## The Reader - A Wonderful Surprise

**5 A- Read and write T (True) or F (False):** (4Ms)

1. Mayar's parents didn't learn to read in braille. ( )
2. The boots in the trunk were muddy. ( )

**B Answer the following questions:**

3. Where did Asser put the school bags?

▶ ..............................................................................................................

4. What did Mayar listen to in the car?

▶ ..............................................................................................................





## 6 Choose the correct answer: (6Ms)

1. If my hair (get - gets - getting - got) wet, I'll use the hairdryer.
2. (Vaccine - Smoothie - Invention - Milkshake) is a type of medicine that stops you getting ill.
3. You have to put (up - out - in - on) the garbage today.
4. My favorite musical instrument is the (chess - film - movie - violin).
5. Cats need attention. This means (this - that - these - those) they need their owners to be interested in them.
6. If she hurries, she (catch - would catch - may catch - could catch) the train.

## 7 Order the words to make correct sentences: (2Ms)

1. down - robots - The - broke - yesterday.

▶ ........................................................................................ .

2. the - mop up - you - Could - juice, - please?

▶ ........................................................................................ ?

## 8 Write an email to your friend Ola: (4Ms)

Tell her about a pet shop you have been to. You wanted to buy a pet or more. Tell her what the seller told you about how to care for your pet. Your email address is jana@hotmail.com. Your friend's email address is ola@gmail.com.

From:

To:

Subject:

........................................................................................

........................................................................................

........................................................................................

........................................................................................




Learning about science in a laboratory

# School time!
# وقت المدرسة!




In this unit I will ....
- read and understand an article about different kinds of classrooms.
- understand and use words for schools and education.
- understand and use adverbs of frequency.
- listen to and understand descriptions of school clubs.
- use make me + adjective to describe my feelings.
- understand and use reported speech.
- read and understand a brochure.
- give reasons for my opinion in writing.
- read and understand stories.

## Objectives

| | |
|---|---|
| Vocabulary | Words related to school: aim, boarding (school), break, cafeteria, demonstration, equipment, flexible, green roofs, gym, halls, history, ICT, math, mobile, neat, nomadic, reindeer, science, sleds, subject, timetable, uniform<br>Words from stories: bit, challenge, collapsed, court, herbs, journey, palace, papyrus, poisonous, screamed, scribe, script, shook, tablet |
| Language | **Adverbs of frequency with the present simple**:<br>- Sometimes, I get the bus with my friends. - I often walk to school when it's dry.<br>**Reported speech:** Basel said that they couldn't go to school. |
| Reading | A report about schools around the world; a blog about school life in the USA; a brochure about an event at a school; a story about school life in ancient Egypt; a story about a difficult journey to school |
| Writing | A paragraph about your school week; sentences about your plans for the future; an opinion, with adverb phrases |
| Speaking | Discuss different school clubs; present your plan for a new school; discuss events in stories |
| Listening | An account of school life in Bangladesh; a dialog about school clubs |
| Life skills | **Creative thinking:** designing your own school<br>**Independence:** writing an opinion with a conclusion |
| Values | **- Cooperation** **- Respect** |
| Issues and challenges | **- Citizenship** **- Globalization** |
| Integrated cross-curriculum topics | **History:** school life in ancient Egypt |

# Lesson 1 Different classrooms



## Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



**boarding school** مدرسة داخلية



**green roofs** أسطُح خضراء



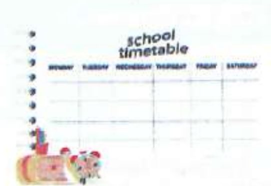
**nomadic** بدوي - رحّال



**sleds** زلاجات



**reindeer** الرَّنَّة (حيوان قطبي يشبه الغزالة)




**timetable** جدول زمني - جدول مواعيد



**outdoor places** أماكن مفتوحة



**classrooms on the move** فصول متحركة



**education** تعليم



**mobile rooms** غُرَف متنقلة




**subjects** مواد دراسية




**flexible** مَرِن

## Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Northern Siberia** | شمال سيبيريا | **nature** | طبيعة |
| **snowy land** | أراضي ثلجية | **environment** | بيئة |
| **frozen land** | أراضي متجمدة | **weather** | طقس |
| **ice** | ثلج | **dry** | جاف |

## Lesson 1

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **tent** | خيمة | **project** | مشروع |
| **roof garden** | حديقة سطح | **culture** | ثقافة |
| **desk** | تختة - مكتب | **traditional skills** | المهارات التقليدية |
| **in the shade** | في الظِّل | **computing** | مادة الحاسب الآلي |
| **space** | مساحة | **chores** | الأعمال (المهّام) المنزلية |
| **wheels** | عجلات | **schedule** | جدول |
| **calm** | هادئ - ساكن | **idea** | فكرة |

## Conjugation of verbs

### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| look after | يعتني بـ | looked after | looked after |
| clean | يُنظِّف | cleaned | cleaned |
| plant | يزرع | planted | planted |
| learn about | يعرف عن - يعلم عن | learned (learnt) about | learned (learnt) about |
| help | يساعد | helped | helped |
| cool | يُبَرِّد - يجعله باردًا | cooled | cooled |
| travel | يسافر | traveled | traveled |
| live | يعيش | lived | lived |
| circle | يضع دائرة حول | circled | circled |
| study | يدرُس – يذاكر | studied | studied |

### Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| bring | يُحْضِر | brought | brought |
| mean | يعني - يقصد | meant | meant |
| teach | يُدَرِّس - يُعَلِّم | taught | taught |

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| think | يفكر - يعتقد | thought | thought |
| build | يبني | built | built |
| sleep | ينام | slept | slept |
| grow | ينمو - يزرع | grew | grown |

## Definitions تعريفات SB Student's Book

| | |
|---|---|
| *boarding school* | : a school where children live and only go home at vacation times |
| *flexible* | : can change easily |
| *mobile* | : can move |
| *subject* | : a topic that you study at school, for example, math, English, history, science |
| *timetable* | : a schedule with the times of all your school classes on it |



## Read and learn

### Classrooms of the world

Classrooms are not the same in every school.

Here are two places where classrooms are a little different.



A roof garden in a city

**Classrooms on the roof!**

In Egypt, some classes have their lessons in a garden on the roof ❶ of the school!

The Shagara at School project ❷ designs gardens and green roofs for schools in Egypt.

❶ سطح

❷ مشروع

Green roofs are gardens on the top of a building. They bring nature into the city. They also clean and cool the air. That means that they are great for the environment.

The project teaches students and teachers how to plant a roof garden. They learn about which plants grow well in the hot, dry weather.

In 2017, classes at one school started going to their green roofs for lessons. People at the project thought this was an amazing idea! In 2019, they built their first classroom on the roof. The desks are in the shade ❸, but there are no walls. Students and teachers have space and can see the flowers and plants.

The Shagara at School Project says roof gardens can help students in many city schools. Green outdoor ❹ places make us calm and healthy – and that is great for learning.

## Classrooms on the move!

In Northern Siberia ❺, some students have their lessons in tents ❻ on the ice and snow! Many people in the North of Siberia are nomadic ❼. This means that they don't live in one place. They travel in sleds ❽ across the frozen land ❾ and sleep in tents. They look after reindeer ❿ and take them to where there is food. So, how do their children get an education? There are two ways. First, some children go away to boarding school ⓫. These children are away from ⓬ their families for many months every year. They can't learn traditional skills ⓭ from their parents, and they often forget their culture's language. The second way is nomadic school. This is a school which travels with the families. The classrooms are tents on the ice, or mobile rooms ⓮ on wheels ⓯. The children study school subjects like math, science, and computing ⓰. However, they also study their own language and traditional skills. The timetable ⓱ is flexible ⓲, so they can help their families with the chores ⓳. At nomadic school, the children are happy because they can stay with their families and get a good education. They learn everything about how to live in their snowy land!



Nomadic children help to look after reindeer

❸ الظل
❹ في الهواء الطلق – بالخارج
❺ شمال سيبيريا
❻ خيَم – خيام
❼ بدوي – رحّال
❽ زلاجات
❾ الأراضي المتجمدة
❿ الرّنة (حيوان قطبي يشبه الغزال)
⓫ مدرسة داخلية
⓬ بعيدين عن
⓭ المهارات التقليدية
⓮ غرف متنقلة
⓯ عجلات – عَجَل
⓰ مادة الحاسب الآلي
⓱ جدول حصص
⓲ مَرِن
⓳ الأعمال (المهام) المنزلية

Unit 3

## Did you know? هل تعلم؟

There are 787 million children in the world who are old enough to go to elementary school. That's a lot of classes!

هناك 787 مليون طفل في العالم بلغوا سن الذهاب إلى المدرسة الابتدائية. وهذا العدد سَيَشْغَل الكثير من الفصول.

## Exercises on Lesson 

### 1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

**boarding – reindeer – sleds – nomadic – tents**

In Northern Siberia, some students have their lessons in ❶ ..................... ! Many people in the North of Siberia are ❷ ............................ . This means that they don't live in one place. They travel in ❸ ......................... across the frozen land and sleep in tents. They look after ❹ ...................... and take them to where there is food.

### 2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

**Mazen** : Do you know that some classes have their lessons in a garden on the roof of the school?

**Salem** : Yes, they are called green ❶ ................................ .

**Mazen** : ❷ ................................ is a green roof?

**Salem** : Green roofs are gardens on the top of a building.

**Mazen** : How can roof gardens help students in city schools?

**Salem** : They are great for the ❸ ................................ .

**Mazen** : Why are green roofs good for the environment?

**Salem** : They bring ❹ ................................ into the city. They also clean and cool the air.

**Mazen** : Green outdoor places make us calm and healthy -- and that is great for learning.

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

**timetable – subjects – nomadic – reindeer – skills**

At ❶ .............................. school, the children are happy because they can stay with their families and get a good education. The children study school ❷ .............................. like math, science, and computing. However, they also study their own language and traditional ❸ .............................. . The ❹ .............................. is flexible, so they can help their families with the chores.

## 4 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

**Green – environment – roofs – designs – nature**

In Egypt, some classes have their lessons in a garden on the roof of the school! The Shagara at School project designs gardens and green ❶ .............................. for schools in Egypt. ❷ .............................. roofs are gardens on the top of a building. They bring ❸ .............................. into the city. They also clean and cool the air. That means that they are great for the ❹ .............................. .

## 5 Choose the correct answer:

1. A (mobile - boarding - flexible) room means it can move.
2. When something is (boarding - flexible - mobile). This means it can change easily.
3. A (subject - mobile - timetable) is a schedule with the times of all your school classes on it.
4. A (subject - boarding - timetable) school is a school where children live and only go home at vacation times.
5. A (timetable - mobile - subject) is a topic that you study at school, for example, math, English, history, science.

6. Math, science, and computing are school (timetables - mobiles - subjects).
7. The timetable is (boarding - flexible - mobile), so they can help their families with the chores.
8. The classrooms are tents on the ice, or (mobile - boarding - flexible) rooms on wheels.
9. Some children go away to (subject - boarding - timetable) school. They are away from their families for many months every year.
10. They travel in (timetables - subjects - sleds) across the frozen land and sleep in tents.

## 6 Read the following text and answer the questions:

In 2017, classes at one school in Egypt started a new project. They wanted to go to their green roofs for lessons. People at the project thought this was an amazing idea! In 2019, they built their first classroom on the roof. The desks are in the shade, but there are no walls. Students and teachers have space and can see the flowers and plants. Roof gardens can help students in many city schools. Green outdoor places make us calm and healthy – and that is great for learning.

### A Choose the correct answer:

1. People at the project thought this was an (unimportant - amazing - old) idea.
2. The desks are in the (room - hall - shade), but there are no walls.

### B Answer these questions:

3. What happened in 2017?

▶ ............................................................................................................ .

4. How are green outdoor places useful?

▶ ............................................................................................................ .

## 7 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. roof - green - a - is - What?

▶ ........................................................................ ?

2. nomadic - are - What - people?

▶ ........................................................................ ?

3. you - Would - to - like - Siberia - visit?

▶ ........................................................................ ?

4. roofs - Green - great - are - the environment - for.

▶ ........................................................................ .

5. is - a - nomadic - What - school?

▶ ........................................................................ ?

6. the children - do - education - How - get - an?

▶ ........................................................................ ?

7. don't - people - Nomadic - one place - in - live.

▶ ........................................................................ .

8. reindeer - after - look - people - Nomadic.

▶ ........................................................................ .

9. are - the - children - Why - happy - the nomadic school - at?

▶ ........................................................................ ?

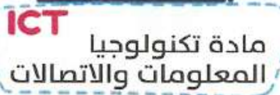
10. can - How - help - roof gardens - in city schools - students?

▶ ........................................................................ ?



## Lesson 2 Language

### Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس

**ICT** مادة تكنولوجيا المعلومات والاتصالات



**school uniform** زيّ مدرسي



**neat** أنيق - مُرَتَّب



**cafeteria** كافتيريا - مطعم

### Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **kindergarten** | حضانة - رياض أطفال | **rule (n)** | قاعدة |
| **middle school** | المدرسة الإعدادية | **school day** | يوم مدرسي - يوم دراسي |
| **grade** | سنة دراسية - صف دراسي | **school trip** | رحلة مدرسية |

## Conjugation of verbs

### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| play | يلعب | played | played |
| start | يبدأ | started | started |
| finish | ينتهي - يُنهي | finished | finished |
| walk to | يمشي إلى | walked to | walked to |
| pick up | يُقِلّ - ينقل (شخص لمكان) | picked up | picked up |
| use | يستخدم - يستعمل | used | used |
| cycle | يركب دراجة | cycled | cycled |
| tidy up | يُرَتِّب - يُنَظِّم | tidied up | tidied up |

## Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| read | يقرأ | read | read |
| bring | يُحْضِر | brought | brought |
| eat | يأكل | ate | eaten |
| take | يأخذ - يستغرق | took | taken |

## Definitions تعريفات SB Student's Book

| | |
|---|---|
| *cafeteria* | : a place where students eat lunch |
| *ICT* | : a subject where you study and use computers |
| *neat* | : clean and tidy, not messy or dirty |
| *school uniform* | : clothes that are the same for every student |



## Read and learn

### How does Lilly go to school?


Lilly, USA

Hi, my name's Lilly, and I go to middle school ❶ in San Francisco, USA. I started school in Kindergarten ❷ when I was six. Now I'm eleven, and I'm in Grade 6. I like my school. In Kindergarten, we played a lot, and there were always lots of toys in the classroom. We do more writing now in Grade 6, and we do more interesting subjects ❸, like ICT ❹. I like using computers! We go to school from Monday to Friday. I don't have to wear ❺ a school uniform ❻, but my clothes and shoes have to be neat. School starts at 8 am and finishes at 3 pm. I often walk to school when it's dry and sunny. I sometimes get the bus with my friends. We have an hour for lunch, and I usually bring lunch from home. I eat in the cafeteria, or outside in summer.

❶ المدرسة الإعدادية
❷ حضانة - رياض أطفال
❸ مواد دراسية
❹ مادة تكنولوجيا المعلومات والاتصالات
❺ أرتدي
❻ زيّ مدرسي





# Grammar Study

## The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط



| Affirmative الإثبات | | Negative النفي | | Interrogative الاستفهام | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| I | like ...... | I | don't like ...... | Do | I like ........ ? |
| He / She / It | likes ...... | He / She / It | doesn't like ...... | Does | he like ........ ? / she like ........ ? / it like ........ ? |
| You / We / They | like ...... | You / We / They | don't like ...... | Do | you like ........ ? / we like ........ ? / they like ........ ? |

**We use the present simple tense to talk about habits and routines.**

◀ يُستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عادات أو أفعال متكررة الحدوث.

- I visit my cousins every week.
- He usually goes to school by bus.

## Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار

**We can use adverbs of frequency with the present simple to say how often something happens. They can help to describe habits or routines.**

◀ يمكننا استخدام ظروف التكرار مع المضارع البسيط لنقول كم عدد مرات تكرار حدوث شيء ما.
يمكن أن تساعد ظروف التكرار في وصف عادات أو أفعال متكررة الحدوث، مثل:

| | |
|---|---|
| always 100 % | Lilly always gets the bus with her friends. |
| usually 80 % | I usually cycle to school. |
| often 60 % | Aban often walks or cycles to school. |
| sometimes 30 % | Lilly sometimes brings lunch from home. |
| never 0 % | Lilly never walks to school. |

**We use these words before the main verb or after (verb to be).**

◄ تُستخدم هذه الكلمات قبل الفعل الأساسى أو بعد (**verb to be**).

- I always wear my uniform on a school day.
- I usually bring lunch from home.
- She often walks to school.
- My desk is sometimes neat, but not always.
- I am never late for school.

| | |
|---|---|
| always | دائمًا |
| usually | عادة |
| often | غالبًا |
| sometimes | أحيانًا |
| never | أبدًا |

## Exercises on Lesson 2





### 1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

**neat – school – cafeteria – uniform – sometimes**

Hi, my name's Lilly, and I'm in Grade 6. We go to school from Monday to Friday. I don't have to wear a school ❶ .................., but my clothes and shoes have to be ❷ .................. . I often walk to school when it's dry and sunny. I ❸ .................. get the bus with my friends. We have an hour for lunch, and I usually bring lunch from home. I eat in the ❹ .................., or outside in summer.

### 2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

**Lilly** : Hi, my name's Lilly, and I am from the USA. What's your name?
**Aban** : Hi, Lilly! I am Aban, from Bangladesh.
**Lilly** : I go to middle school, and I'm in Grade 6. What about you?
**Aban** : I'm in Grade 6, too.
**Lilly** : I don't have to wear a school uniform, but my clothes and shoes have to be ❶ .................. .
**Aban** : I wear my school ❷ .................. every school day. It's a school rule.
**Lilly** : I sometimes get the bus with my friends.

**Aban** : I often ❸ ...................... or cycle to school.

**Lilly** : We have an hour for lunch, and I usually bring lunch from home. I eat in the ❹ ...................... .

**Aban** : I have lunch in the cafeteria, too.

## 3 Choose the correct answer: (Vocabulary)

1. (ICT - CD - PE) is a subject where you study and use computers.
2. The word (busy - neat - worried) means clean and tidy, not messy or dirty.
3. The school (uniform - shoes - bag) is clothes that are the same for every student.
4. A (cafeteria - museum - library) is a place where students eat lunch.
5. We do more interesting subjects, like (PE - PHD - ICT). I like using computers!
6. I'm always clean. My clothes and shoes have to be (messy - neat - dirty).
7. I wear my school (uniform - bus - subjects) every school day. It's a school rule.
8. I tidy up my desk a lot to keep it (dirty - messy - neat).
9. I have sandwiches in the (apartment - cafeteria - bus). It's a building in my school.
10. I'm in (grade - number - school) six. Next year, I will be in middle school.

## 4 Choose the correct answer: (Structures)

1. I don't have a bike. I walk to school. I (never - always - usually) cycle to school.
2. I wear my school uniform every school day. It's a school rule. I (never - always - usually) wear my uniform on a school day.
3. We go on school trips to museums once or twice a year. We (never - don't - sometimes) go on school trips.
4. On most days of the week, I have sandwiches in the cafeteria. My lunch is (never - always - usually) a sandwich in the cafeteria.
5. I tidy up my desk a lot to keep it neat, but sometimes it is messy. My desk is (never - always - often) neat, but not always.

6. We (going to - go - goes) to school from Sunday to Thursday.
7. School (starts - start - is starting) at 8 am and finishes at 3 pm.
8. We (are having - has - have) an hour for lunch.
9. I (often walks - often walk - walk often) to school when it's dry and sunny.
10. How does Lilly (go - goes - going) to school?
11. I (bring usually - usually bring - usually brings) lunch from home.
12. He often (cycles – cycle – is cycling) or takes the bus.
13. Lilly (sometimes bring - brings sometimes - sometimes brings) lunch from home.
14. Aban (often walk - walks often - often walks) or cycles to school.
15. From June to October, it (is sometimes - sometimes is - are sometimes) rainy in Bangladesh.
16. There (is always - always are - are always) floods in Bangladesh.
17. I (never - am never - never am) late for school.
18. She (often walks - often walk - walks often) to school.
19. Lilly (gets always - always gets - always get) the bus with her friends.
20. How many days (do - does - is) Aban go to school every week?
21. I (visit sometimes - sometimes visits - sometimes visit) my friend Ayman on Friday.
22. Lilly (never walk - never walks - walks never) to school.

## 5 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. in - 6 - I'm - Grade.

▶ ........................................................................................................ .

2. Aban - does - How - school - to - go?

▶ ........................................................................................................ ?

3. go - I - to - school - middle.

▶ ........................................................................................................ .

4. How many - every week - days - study - Aban - does?

▶ ........................................................................................................ ?

5. from - to Thursday - to school - We - Sunday - go.

▶ ........................................................................ .

6. sometimes - I - the bus - get - my friends - with.

▶ ........................................................................ .

7. lunch - for - hour - an - have - We.

▶ ........................................................................ .

8. bring - usually - I - home - from - lunch.

▶ ........................................................................ .

9. school - to - go - Lilly - does - How?

▶ ........................................................................ ?

10. my desk - tidy up - keep it - I - to - neat.

▶ ........................................................................ .

**6** **Write a paragraph of (60) words using the following elements:**

**"My school week"**




........................................................................

........................................................................

........................................................................

........................................................................

........................................................................

........................................................................

........................................................................

........................................................................

........................................................................

........................................................................

........................................................................

........................................................................

# Lesson 3 School clubs



## Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



**cooking club**
نادي الطهي



**football club**
نادي كرة القدم



**music club**
نادي الموسيقى



**swimming club**
نادي السباحة



**art club**
نادي الفنون



**competitions**
مسابقات - منافسات



**terrific**
رائع - مذهل



**make me proud**
يجعلني فخورًا

## Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **make me healthy** | يجعلني بصحة جيدة | **play (n)** | مسرحية |
| **make you relaxed** | يجعلك مسترخيًا (مرتاحًا) | **watching cartoons** | مشاهدة أفلام الرسوم المتحركة |
| **make me hungry** | يجعلني جائعًا | **mind** | عقل - ذهن |
| **playing music** | عَزْف الموسيقى | **skill** | مهارة |
| **playing chess** | لَعِب الشطرنج | **Join our club.** | التحق بنادينا. |
| **friendly matches** | مباريات ودية | **early in the morning** | في الصباح الباكر |

## Conjugation of verbs

### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| enter | يَدْخُل | entered | entered |
| watch | يشاهد | watched | watched |
| join | ينضم إلى - يلتحق بـ | joined | joined |
| paint | يطلي - يُلَوِّن | painted | painted |

### Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| shoot | يُسَدِّد الكرة | shot | shot |
| come | يأتي | came | come |
| draw | يرسم | drew | drawn |
| meet | يقابل - يلتقي بـ | met | met |
| make | يجعل | made | made |



### Read and learn



## Art club!

Everyone knows that art is good for your mind. It makes you relaxed and happy. Come to the art room at 1 pm on Tuesdays to learn to draw and paint.

## Tennis is terrific!



Tennis is a great sport. It makes you healthy and happy! We have classes every Wednesday at 4 pm. Join our club to learn a new skill and meet new people!

## Activity Book Text



Today we practiced inside for the first half hour. First, we had to run up and down the playground 20 times. Then we climbed a rope. That was really difficult. After that, we ran a 400-meter race outside. I love running but it makes me very tired. After that, we played a game for 15 minutes. It was great. My team won!



لقد تدربنا اليوم بالداخل في النصف ساعة الأولي. في البداية كان علينا أن نركض بطول الملعب ذهابًا وإيابًا 20 مرة. ثم تسلقنا الحبل. وكان هذا صعبًا جدًا. قمنا بعد ذلك بالجرى في سباق 400 متر بالخارج. أنا أحب الجري ولكنه يجعلني مرهقًا جدًا. ثم لعبنا بعد ذلك لعبة لمدة 15 دقيقة. كان ذلك رائعًا، وفاز فريقي!



Last week, our club went for a walk in the park. When our teacher pointed to an object, we took a photograph of it but we could only take one photo! So, we had to look carefully and decide where to stand. It was fun and it made me excited about the subject. When we compared our photos later, they were really different!



لقد قام أفراد نادينا بنزهة في الحديقة الأسبوع الماضي. حينما كان معلمنا يشير إلى شيء ما، كنا نلتقط صورة له. ولكن لم يكن بإمكاننا سوى التقاط صورة واحدة لذلك الشيء. لذلك كان علينا النظر بتدقيق وأن نقرّر أين نقف. لقد كان الأمر ممتعًا وهذا ما جعلني متحمس لهذا الأمر. عندما قمنا بمقارنة الصور التي التقطناها بعد ذلك، كانت الصور مختلفة تمامًا.

## Exercises on Lesson 

### 1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

**Hassan** : Hi, Shady! Have you heard about the Art Club in the school?

**Shady** : Hi, Hassan! Yes, and there are tennis classes, too.

**Hassan** : Which club would you like to join?

**Shady** : I think tennis is terrific! What about you?

**Hassan** : Oh, yes! ❶ .............................. is a great sport, but I think everyone knows that art is also good for your mind.

**Shady** : Why do you like art?

**Hassan** : It ❷ .............................. me relaxed and happy. Come to the art room to learn how to draw and paint.

**Shady** : Thanks, but tennis makes me ❸ .............................. and happy! Would you ❹ .............................. our club to learn a new skill and meet new people?

### 2 Choose the correct answer:




1. Playing music for my parents (make - makes) me proud. SB
2. Cooking club always makes (me - I) hungry! SB
3. (Swimming - Swim) makes me healthy and strong. SB
4. Sad plays and movies (make - makes) me unhappy! SB
5. My friends (make - makes) me happy.
6. (Run - Running) makes me feel healthy.
7. Playing tennis makes (me - I) feel healthy.
8. Running (make - makes) me tired.
9. Books make (me - I) excited.
10. (Watching - Watch) cartoons makes me bored.
11. My friends (make - makes) me happy.
12. Art (make - makes) you relaxed.
13. Tennis and football (make - makes) you healthy!
14. (Eating - Eat) unhealthy food makes you sick.
15. (Listening - Listen) to music makes me feel relaxed.



## 3 Read the following text and answer the questions:

Hello! I'm Sherif. I've joined the Art Club at school. Last week, our club went for a walk in the park. When our teacher pointed to an object, we took a photograph of it, but we could only take one photo! So, we had to look carefully and decide where to stand. It was fun, and it made me excited about the subject. When we compared our photos later, they were really different!

### A Choose the correct answer:

1. Sherif is in the (Music Club - Swimming Club - Art Club) at school.
2. They went for a (walk - drive - race) in the park.

### B Answer these questions:

3. When did the club go for a walk in the park? ▶ ................................................ .
4. What happened when they compared their photos later? ▶ ........................ .

## 4 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. doing - are - What - children - the?
▶ ................................................................................................ ?
2. shoot - Children - goals - can.
▶ ................................................................................................ .
3. and happy - makes - you - Art - relaxed.
▶ ................................................................................................ .
4. makes - Tennis - you - and happy - healthy!
▶ ................................................................................................ !
5. sport - great - a - is - Tennis.
▶ ................................................................................................ .
6. and strong - makes - me - Swimming - healthy.
▶ ................................................................................................ .
7. friends - happy - make - My - me.
▶ ................................................................................................ .
8. feel - makes - healthy - Running - me.
▶ ................................................................................................ .

# Lesson 4 Green city school



## Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



**Open Day** اليوم المفتوح



**principal** مدير مدرسة



**Eco-playground** فِناء صديق للبيئة



**environmentally friendly** صديق للبيئة



**demonstration** عَرْض توضيحي



**passionate about** شغوف بشأن



**encourage** يُشَجِّع



**head to** يَتَوَجَّه إلى

## Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **special** | مُمَيَّز - استثنائي | **tour** | جولة |
| **buildings** | مباني | **electricity** | الكهرباء |
| **green space** | مساحة خضراء | **solar panel** | لوحة طاقة شمسية |
| **join us** | انضم إلينا - إلْتَحِق بنا | **roof** | سطح |
| **schedule** | جدول | **recycling room** | غرفة إعادة التدوير |
| **presentation** | عَرْض - تقديم | **materials** | مواد - مُعِدّات |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **the waste** | النفايات – القمامة | **nature trail** | مَسار طبيعي - دَرْب طبيعي |
| **climbing frame** | إطار التَّسَلُّق | **insects** | حشرات |
| **recycled** | مُعَاد تدويره | **car park** | موقف سيارات |
| **mostly** | غالبًا - في الغالب | **bike sheds** | موقف دراجات (مكان لركن الدراجات) |

## Definitions تعريفات SB Student's Book

| | |
|---|---|
| *passionate* | : having strong feelings |
| *principal* | : the person in charge of a school |
| *demonstration* | : when you show other people how to do or make something |
| *encourage* | : persuade someone to do something by giving them advice or support |
| *Eco-playground* | : a playground that does not harm the environment |

## Conjugation of verbs

### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| harm | يضر - يؤذي | harmed | harmed |
| head to | يتوجه إلى | headed to | headed to |
| sort | يفرز - يُصَنِّف | sorted | sorted |
| arrive at | يصل إلى | arrived at | arrived at |
| recycle | يعيد تدوير | recycled | recycled |
| encourage | يُشَجِّع | encouraged | encouraged |

### Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| see | يرى | saw | seen |
| take place | يَحْدُث | took place | taken place |





## Green City School Open Day


Our Green Library

At Green City School, we are passionate about ❶ helping the environment. Come and find out why we are the greenest ❷ school in the city!

New students and their families are welcome to join us for our Open Day on 25th May.

Open day schedule ❸:

9 am New students and families arrive at the school

Presentation ❹ by the principal ❺

10 am Tour ❻ of the school buildings

First, see our new Green Library. Why is it green? Because all its electricity comes from solar panels ❼ on the roof

Then, we head to ❽ the Recycling Room ❾. This is where we can recycle paper, plastic, and other materials. Watch a demonstration ❿ about how we sort ⓫ the waste from our classrooms

After that, come and see our Eco-playground ⓬. The climbing frame ⓭ is made mostly with recycled ⓮ materials. There is also a nature trail around the playground, where we can learn about plants, animals, and insects

12 pm Enjoy a delicious lunch in our School Garden, where we grow our own flowers, fruit, and vegetables

1 pm Any questions? This is your chance to ask the Green School students and teachers! There is a small car park, but we encourage ⓯ you to walk, cycle, or come by bus!


Our Eco-playground

❶ شغوف بشأن
❷ الأخضر
❸ جدول
❹ عَرْض – تقديم
❺ مدير المدرسة
❻ جولة
❼ لوحات طاقة شمسية
❽ يتوجه إلى
❾ غرفة إعادة التدوير
❿ عَرْض توضيحي
⓫ يفرز – يُصَنِّف
⓬ ملعب (حُوش) صديق للبيئة
⓭ إطار التَّسلُّق
⓮ مُعاد تدويرها
⓯ يُشجِّع



**Tip!**

- If something is environmentally friendly, it does not harm the environment.

إذا كان الشيء صديقًا للبيئة، فهو لا يضر بها.

## Exercises on Lesson 4

### 1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

**Kareema** : Hi, Ghada! Do you know that I go to the Green City School?

**Ghada** : Hi, Kareema! What is special about the Green ❶ .................. School?

**Kareema** : It is very environmentally friendly. It has a lot of green space.

**Ghada** : What does environmentally friendly mean?

**Kareema** : If something is environmentally friendly, it does not ❷ ............................ the environment.

**Ghada** : How does it help the environment?

**Kareema** : At Green City School, we are ❸ ............................ about helping the environment. We have a new Green Library, too.

**Ghada** : Why is it called green?

**Kareema** : Because all its ❹ ............................ comes from solar panels on the roof.

### 2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

**encourage – materials – grow – Eco-playground – trail**

Come to Green City School and see our ❶ .................................... . The climbing frame is made mostly with recycled materials. There is also a nature ❷ .................................... around the playground, where we can learn about plants, animals, and insects. Enjoy a delicious lunch in our School Garden, where we ❸ .................................... our own flowers, fruit, and vegetables. There is a small car park, but we ❹ .................................... you to walk, cycle, or come by bus!

## 3 Choose the correct answer:

1. (Demonstration - Presentation) means when you show other people how to do or make something.
2. To (encourage - enjoy) means to persuade someone to do something by giving them advice or support.
3. (Environmentally friendly - Eco-playground) is a playground that does not harm the environment.
4. The (principal – police officer) is the person in charge of a school.
5. When someone is (enjoyable - passionate), they are having strong feelings.
6. If something is (carefully - hopefully - environmentally) friendly, it does not harm the environment.
7. On the (Open - Work - School) Day, we play and enjoy.
8. At Green City School, we are (helpless - passionate - careless) about helping the environment.
9. There is a nature (trail - mail - tail) around the playground, where we can learn about plants, animals, and insects.
10. We can head to the (Cycling - Recycling - Bicycling) Room. This is where we can recycle paper, plastic, and other materials.
11. We (recycle - encourage - arrive) you to walk or cycle. It's better for your body and for the environment.
12. Enjoy a delicious lunch in our School Garden, where we (grow - eat - cook) our own flowers, fruit, and vegetables.

## 4 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. waste - sort - classrooms - We - from - our - the.

   ▶ ................................................................................ .

2. is - There - trail - a nature - the playground - around.

   ▶ ................................................................................ .

3. park - car - a small - is - There.

   ▶ ................................................................................ .

4. the Recycling Room - can - visitors - What - in - see?

▶ ................................................................................................?

5. School Garden - a delicious - in - lunch - Enjoy - our.

▶ ................................................................................................ .

6. students - join - New - are - us - welcome to.

▶ ................................................................................................ .

7. does - Where - start - tour - the school?

▶ ................................................................................................?

8. trail - nature - the - is - Where?

▶ ................................................................................................?

**5** **Write a paragraph of (60) words using the following elements:**

**"Green buildings"**

**Ideas to help you:** **help - green space - grow - flowers, fruit, and vegetables - walk to - cycle - environmentally friendly - recycled materials - not harm - solar panels**

................................................................

................................................................

................................................................

................................................................



................................................................................................

................................................................................................

................................................................................................

................................................................................................

................................................................................................

................................................................................................

## Lesson 5 Language



### Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



**bridge** كوبري - جِسر



**collapse** ينهار - يسقط



**steep** شديد الانحدار



**crash** تَحَطُّم - انهيار



**repair** يصلح - يُرَمِّم



**journey** رحلة برية طويلة



**village square** ساحة القرية



**storm** عاصفة

### Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **newspapers** | صُحُف - جرائد | **broken (adj)** | مكسور - مُحَطَّم |
| **websites** | مواقع إلكترونية | **get home** | يصل إلى البيت |
| **lie awake** | يرقد مستيقظًا - يستلقي مستيقظًا | **hill** | تَلّ |
| **country** | بلد - دولة | **the traffic** | حركة المرور |
| **mountains** | جِبَال | **surprise (n)** | مفاجأة |
| **all around it** | حولها من كل مكان | **in a yellow coat** | يرتدي معطفًا أصفر |
| **stores** | متاجر - محلات | **eventually** | أخيرًا - وفي النهاية |

## Prepositions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| listen to | يستمع إلى | get on | يركب (مَرْكَبَة) |
| point to | يُشير إلى | go across | يَعْبُر |
| pick up | يلتقط – يأخذ | arrive at | يصل إلى |
| look at | ينظر إلى | write about | يكتب عن |
| come up | تُشرِق - تسطع | smile at | يبتسم إلى |
| get to | يصل إلى | hear about | يسمع عن |

## Conjugation of verbs

### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| last | يستمر - يدوم | lasted | lasted |
| listen to | يستمع إلى | listened to | listened to |
| walk to | يمشي إلى | walked to | walked to |
| point to | يُشير إلى | pointed to | pointed to |
| stay at | يبقى - يظلّ | stayed at | stayed at |
| pick up | يلتقط - يأخذ | picked up | picked up |
| look at | ينظر إلى | looked at | looked at |
| repair | يصلح - يُرَمِّم | repaired | repaired |
| ask | يسأل - يطلب | asked | asked |
| smile at | يبتسم إلى | smiled at | smiled at |
| collapse | ينهار - يسقط | collapsed | collapsed |
| try | يحاول | tried | tried |

## Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| send | يُرسل | sent | sent |
| hear about | يسمع عن | heard about | heard about |
| get to | يصل إلى | got to | got to |
| come up | تُشرق - تسطع | came up | come up |
| run to | يجري إلى | ran to | run to |
| lie awake | يستلقي مستيقظًا | lay awake | lain awake |
| drive | يقود (مَرْكَبَة) | drove | driven |
| go across | يَعْبُر | went across | gone across |
| write about | يكتب عن | wrote about | written about |

## The bridge to school

Lina lay awake ❶, listening to the wind and rain. The storm ❷ lasted all night. Then, as the sun came up ❸, she heard a crash ❹. She ran to the window. "What was that?" asked her sister, Sarah.

Lina looked at the river near their house. "Oh no!" she said. "The bridge ❺ has collapsed!"

The village where Lina and Sarah lived was small, and had steep mountains ❻ all around it. The bridge over the river was the quickest way to get to the town, with the school, stores, doctors, and sports center ❼.

❶ استلقت مستيقظة
❷ عاصفة
❸ أشرقت الشمس
❹ تحطُّم – انهيار
❺ كوبري – جسر
❻ جبال شديدة الانحدار
❼ المركز الرياضي
❽ شاور على – أشار إلى

They ran to the kitchen to see their parents. "I've just listened to the radio," said Mom. "They said that the storm would stop soon. Then we can see what has happened."

Eventually, the rain stopped, and Lina and her family walked to the river. Other people were there too.

Lina's dad pointed to ❽ the broken bridge. He said that they couldn't go to town, or the school. "What are we going to do?" asked Lina.

They had to stay at home that day, and their teacher sent work for them to do online.

The next morning, a school bus drove into the village square ❾. "Look, Lina," said Sarah. "The bus is here!"

"The bus?" said Lina. "But it's such a long way by road!"

"I know, but it's the only thing we can do," said Sarah, picking up her bag and running to the door.

As Lina got on the bus, she looked at the bridge. Seeing it broken made her sad. Their life would be different until someone repaired it. She enjoyed going across it in the mornings, and walking up the hill ❿ on the other side. She was often the first to arrive at school. Now she would be late!

The bus journey took two hours. It was hot, and the traffic moved slowly. Lina was sleepy and sad.

❾ ساحة القرية
❿ تل
⓫ مواقع إلكترونية
⓬ مفاجأة
⓭ معدني – معدن

At school, Lina asked to use the computer. She wrote a letter about the storm and the broken bridge. When she got home, she took photos.

Her teacher said that writing a letter for everyone to see was a great idea, because everybody should know about the bridge and try to help. She helped Lina send the letter and photos to newspapers and websites ⓫ all over the country.

The next day, Lina and her friends took the bus to school. To their surprise ⓬, when they came home, they saw engineers and builders at the river. They smiled at the children.

"We heard about your letter!" said a man in a yellow coat. "We're building a new bridge, so you can get to school quickly."

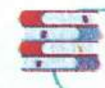
After a week, there was a new metal ⓭ bridge.

"Well done, Lina," said Sarah. "Your letter helped everybody!"



Term 1

# Grammar Study



## Reported speech (statements)

## تحويل الجملة الخبرية إلى كلام غير مباشر

**الكلام غير المباشر هو الكلام المنقول عن لسان شخص آخر.**

### The steps

■ خطوات تحويل الجملة من كلام مباشر إلى كلام غير مباشر:

■ **We use reported speech when we tell someone what another person said.**

**1.** We use a reporting verb (**said** - **told**).

**1.** (**said to**) تُحول إلى (**told**)، بينما (**said**) فقط تبقى كما هي.

**2.** We omit the quotation marks and the comma, and we can use the word "that" as a conjunction.

**2.** نحذف الـ (" ") والفاصلة (,) ونربط بكلمة (**that**) ويجوز الاستغناء عنها.

**3.** We change pronouns and possessive adjectives according to the meaning.

**3.** تُحَوَّل الضمائر وصفات الملكية على حسب معنى الجملة.

**4.** We change the tenses from present to past.

**4.** يُحَوَّل زمن الجملة من المضارع إلى الماضي، وتُحَوَّل ظروف الزمان والمكان وأسماء الإشارة كالآتي ما لم يحدث تغيير في الزمان أو المكان، إذا كان فعل القول في الماضي.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *present simple* | ▶▶▶ | *past simple* |
| *present continuous* | ▶▶▶ | *past continuous* |
| *present perfect* | ▶▶▶ | *past perfect* |
| *will – can* | ▶▶▶ | *would - could* |

| Direct | Indirect | Direct | Indirect |
|---|---|---|---|
| I | he – she | you | I – we – they |
| me | him – her | you | me – us – them |
| my | his – her | your | my – our – their |
| we | they | am – is | was |
| us | them | are | were |
| our | their | has to – have to | had to |





**Examples:**

- Ahmed said, "I'm very tired."
  - ▶ Ahmed said that he was very tired.
- Heba said to Nahla, "I visit my aunt every week."
  - ▶ Heba told Nahla that she visited her aunt every week.
- "I'm doing my homework," said Ashraf.
  - ▶ Ashraf said that he was doing his homework.
- "I finished my work," Amal said to her mother.
  - ▶ Amal told her mom that she had finished her work.
- "I will travel to Alexandria," said Samy.
  - ▶ Samy said that he would travel to Alexandria.
- Tamer and Amr said, "We can climb that tree."
  - ▶ Tamer and Amr said that they could climb that tree.
- She said "I walk with my friends"
  - ▶ She said she walked with her friends.
- She said "The bridge has collapsed!"
  - ▶ Lina said that the bridge had collapsed.

## Exercises on Lesson 5



### 1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

**steep – said – storm – broken – crash**

Lina lay awake, listening to the wind and rain. The ❶ .......................... lasted all night. Then, as the sun came up, she heard a ❷ ...................... . She ran to the window. Lina looked at the river near their house. She said, "The bridge has collapsed!" The village where Lina and Sarah lived was small, and had ❸ ........................... mountains all around it. As Lina got on the bus, she looked at the bridge. Seeing it ❹ .......................... made her sad. Their life would be different until someone repaired it.



## 2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

**Lina** : I heard a crash. What was that?

**Sarah** : Sadly, the bridge has ❶ .......................... ! It's the storm.

**Lina** : Oh no! The bridge over the river was the quickest way to get to the town.

**Sarah** : Mom ❷ .......................... she had just listened to the radio. They said that the storm ❸ .......................... stop soon.

**Lina** : I hope so.

**Sarah** : We couldn't go to town, or the school.

**Lina** : What are we going to do?

**Sarah** : Nothing. Our life would be different until someone ❹ .......................... it.

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

**is – said – journey – bridge – was**

The bus ❶ .......................... to school took two hours. It was hot, and the traffic moved slowly. Lina was sleepy and sad. At school, Lina asked to use the computer. She wrote a letter about the storm and the broken ❷ .......................... . When she got home, she took photos. Her teacher ❸ .......................... that writing a letter for everyone to see ❹ .......................... a great idea, because everybody should know about the bridge and try to help. She helped Lina send the letter and photos to newspapers and websites all over the country.

## 4 Choose the correct answer: (Vocabulary)

1. Something which is difficult to climb is (steep - deep). SB
2. When you travel to get to a place, you go on (a river - a journey). SB





3. If you fix something, you (break - repair) it. SB
4. If something (builds - collapses), it falls down suddenly. SB
5. Lina looked at the broken bridge. They needed someone to (break - drive - repair) it.
6. The bus (square - journey - wheel) took two hours.
7. There was a (mountain - hill - bridge) to cross to the other side of the river.
8. The (rain - storm - snow) was very strong. The very strong wind made the bridge collapse.

## 5 Choose the correct answer: (Structures)

1. Mom said she had just (listened - listen) to the radio.
2. Sarah said that the bus (is - was) here.
3. Sarah said that It (was - is) the only thing they (can - could) do.
4. He said they had (heard - hear) about her letter.
5. Lina said that the bridge (has - is - had) collapsed.
6. She said she (walk - walked - is walking) to school with her friends.
7. They said that the storm (would - will - can) stop soon.
8. Mom said that we (can - could - will) see what had happened.
9. A man in a yellow coat said they (were - are) building a new bridge, so they (can - could) get to school quickly.
10. Sarah said her letter (had - has - is) helped everybody.
11. Mohamed said that he (were - was - is) coming.
12. Mustafa said that he (didn't - hasn't - hadn't) gone to the party.
13. Shahd said that he (worked - works - has worked) in a bank.
14. She said that Lucy (will - was - would) come later.
15. Alaa said that he (hasn't - didn't - hadn't) eaten breakfast.
16. Hazem said that he (is - was - were) talking to his friend on the phone.





17. Karam said that he had (visited - visit - visiting) his friends on the weekend.
18. Maher said that he (haven't - hadn't - wasn't) eaten sushi before.
19. Taqwa said that she (is doing - was doing - are doing) the washing-up.
20. Khalid said that he (would - will - does) go to the park next weekend.

## 6 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. bridge - did - collapse - When - the?
   ▶ ............................................................ ?
2. night - all - lasted - storm - The.
   ▶ ............................................................ .
3. just - I've - to - listened - radio - the.
   ▶ ............................................................ .
4. hours - two - took - journey - The bus.
   ▶ ............................................................ .
5. the storm - said that - They - soon - stop - would.
   ▶ ............................................................ .
6. walked - the river - her family - Lina - to - and.
   ▶ ............................................................ .
7. do - to - going - we - are - What?
   ▶ ............................................................ ?
8. bridge - a - new - building - We're.
   ▶ ............................................................ .



# Lesson 6 Writing an opinion



## Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس





education
التعليم



school trips
رحلات مدرسية



experiences
خبرات - تجارب



real life
الحياة الواقعية

## Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| results | نتائج | interesting | مثير للاهتمام - مُشَوِّق |
| give reasons | يعطي أسباب | fun | ممتع - مُسلِّي |
| brain | مخ - عقل | important | مهم - هام |
| instrument | آلة - أداة | better | أفضل - أحسن |

## Writing an opinion

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| in my opinion | من وجهة نظري - في رأيي | title | عنوان |
| first of all | أولاً - بدايةً | introduction | مقدمة |
| in addition | بالإضافة إلى ذلك - علاوة على ذلك | main ideas | أفكار الرئيسية |
| finally | أخيرًا - في الأخير | conclusion | خاتمة |
| to sum up | للتلخيص - ولنوجز | | |

## Conjugation of verbs

### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| learn about | يتعلم عن | learned about | learned about |
| sum up | يُلخِّص | summed up | summed up |
| introduce | يُقدِّم | introduced | introduced |

## Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| see | يرى | saw | seen |
| understand | يفهم | understood | understood |
| think | يعتقد - يفكر | thought | thought |
| give | يعطي | gave | given |
| have fun | يستمتع | had fun | had fun |

## Tip!

When you write about your opinion, you need to give reasons for it. In the main ideas paragraphs, give different reasons for your opinion, and use phrases to introduce each new reason. We use commas after these adverb phrases.

عندما تكتب عن رأيك، عليك أن تعطي أسبابًا لذلك الرأي.
في فقرات الأفكار الرئيسية، قم بإعطاء أسباب مختلفة لرأيك، واستخدم عباراتٍ لِعَرض كل سبب جديد، وتُستخدم الفواصل بعد هذه العبارات التي تحتوي على أحد الظروف

**First of all,** we can learn a lot ...
**In addition,** school trips are often more interesting than ...
**Finally,** we can continue learning when ...



## Read and learn



### Are school trips important?

by Nesma, aged 12

In my opinion ❶, school trips are exciting learning experiences ❷.
First of all, we can learn a lot by visiting new places. When we learn about something in a classroom and then see it in real life ❸, we understand it better. In addition, school trips are


Schoolchildren at the Egyptian Museum, Cairo

❶ في رأيي – من وجهة نظري ❷ تجارب ❸ الحياة الواقعية





often more interesting than only reading about things in books or watching videos. Finally, we can continue learning when we are back in the classroom after the school trip. We can do a project about what we saw on the trip.

**To sum up** ❹, school trips are a very important part of our **education** ❺. I think we should try to go on one school trip every year.

❹ للتلخيص - ولنوجز
❺ التعليم

## Activity Book Text

## Is studying the past important?

هل من المهم دراسة الماضي؟

I believe that studying the past helps us understand the present. In my opinion, it is important that we understand how past events have created the present.

أعتقد أن دراسة الماضي تساعدنا في فهم الحاضر. في رأيي، من المهم أن نفهم كيف ساهمت أحداث الماضي في صناعة الحاضر.

First of all, we can learn a lot by studying the past. History helps us understand our society and other cultures because we learn about life in the past, important artists, scientists, and politicians. In addition, we learn about how and why life has changed over the years.

بدايةً، يمكننا أن نتعلم الكثير من خلال دراسة الماضي. يساعدنا التاريخ في فهم مجتمعنا والحضارات الأخرى، لأننا نتعرّف على الحياة في الماضي، ونتعرّف على الفنانين والعلماء والسياسيين المهمين. علاوة على ذلك، نعرف كيف ولماذا تغيّرت الحياة على مر السنين.

Some people say that the present is more interesting than the past, but I don't agree. History is interesting and exciting because it is full of great stories and interesting people. Finally, history helps us learn from past mistakes so that we don't repeat the same mistakes in the future.

يقول بعض الناس أن الحاضر أكثر إثارة للاهتمام من الماضي، لكنني لا أتفق مع كلامهم. فالتاريخ مثير للاهتمام ومشوّق لأنه مليء بالقصص الرائعة والأشخاص المهمين. وأخيرًا، يساعدنا التاريخ على التعلّم من أخطاء الماضي حتى لا نكرر نفس الأخطاء في المستقبل.

In conclusion, I think that studying history is an important part of our education. History helps us learn from the past and it helps us understand why and how things change.

في الختام، أعتقد أن دراسة التاريخ جزء مهم من تعليمنا. فالتاريخ يساعدنا على التعلّم من الماضي، كما أنه يساعدنا على فهم لماذا وكيف تتغير الأشياء.





## Exercises on Lesson 6

### 1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:






**In addition – In my opinion – To sum up – Finally – First of all**

❶ ......................., all children should learn music at school. ❷ ......................., I think playing music is a good way to relax. ❸ ......................., learning music is a good way to be creative and use different parts of your brain. ❹ ......................., learning an instrument teaches us good habits. We learn that we have to practice to get great results! ❺ ......................., I think that we should learn more music in school.

### 2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

**Eman** : Hello, Nesma! Do you think school trips are important?

**Nesma** : Hello, Eman! In my ❶ ......................., school trips are exciting learning experiences.

**Eman** : Why do you think that?

**Nesma** : ❷ ....................... of all, we can learn a lot by visiting new places.

**Eman** : What else?

**Nesma** : In addition, school trips are often more interesting than only reading about things in books or watching videos.

**Eman** : I see what you mean.

**Nesma** : ❸ ......................., we can continue learning when we are back in the classroom after the school trip.

**Eman** : We can do a project about what we saw on the trip.

**Nesma** : That's right. To ❹ ....................... up, school trips are a very important part of our education.





## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

**addition – sum – Finally – opinion – First**

In my ❶ ........................., school trips are exciting learning experiences. ❷ ......................... of all, we can learn a lot by visiting new places. In ❸ ........................., school trips are often more interesting than only reading about things in books or watching videos. Finally, we can continue learning when we are back in the classroom after the school trip. To ❹ ..................... up, school trips are a very important part of our education.

## 4 Choose the correct answer:

1. In my (opinion - addition), school trips are exciting learning experiences.
2. (Sum - First) of all, we can learn a lot by visiting new places.
3. In (addition - sum), school trips are often more interesting than only reading about things in books or watching videos.
4. (Finally - Opinion), we can continue learning when we are back in the classroom after the school trip.
5. To (first - sum up), school trips are a very important part of our education.

## 5 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. important - trips - school - Are?

▶ ........................................................................................................ ?

2. school - In addition, - are - trips - interesting - often.

▶ ........................................................................................................ .

3. children - All - learn - at school - should - Arabic.

▶ ........................................................................................................ .

4. a good - clubs - learn - School - way - to - are.

▶ ........................................................................................................ .

5. subject - useful - most - the - is - ICT.

▶ ...................................................................................................... .

6. the environment - should - at school - about - We - learn.

▶ ...................................................................................................... .

## 6 Write a paragraph of (60) words using the following elements:

**"ICT is the most useful subject."**

**Ideas to help you:** computers - useful - everything - homework - school projects - lessons - internet - information - world language

......................................................................................................

......................................................................................................

......................................................................................................

......................................................................................................

......................................................................................................

......................................................................................................

......................................................................................................

......................................................................................................

......................................................................................................

......................................................................................................

......................................................................................................

......................................................................................................

......................................................................................................

......................................................................................................

# Lesson 7 Story: The doctor comes to school

## Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس





**scribe** ناسخ - كاتب



**scripts** مخطوطات - نصوص



**palace** قصر



**pharaoh's court** بلاط الفرعون (قصر الفرعون)



**papyrus** ورق البردي



**wooden tablet** لوح خشبي



**bite (v) (n)** يلدغ - لدغة



**scream (n)** يصرخ



**shake** يهزّ - يرجّ



**poisonous** سام - مسموم



**shocked** مصدوم



**confused** محتار

## Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **main characters** | شخصيات رئيسية | **sore** | مُلْتهب - مُتقرّح |
| **bright** | مشرقة - ساطعة | **kind of** | نوع من |
| **comfortable** | مريح | **circles** | دوائر - حلقات |
| **herbs** | أعشاب | **cloth** | قطعة قماش |
| **a bottle of oil** | زجاجة زيت | **for a while** | لبعض الوقت |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **start shouting** | بدأ في الصراخ (الصياح) | **get sick** | يَمْرَض |
| **rolls (n)** | لفّات - لفافات | **amazed** | مندهش - مذهول |
| **notes** | ملاحظات | **work hard** | يعمل بِجِدّ |
| **studying the boy's hand** | تفحص يد الولد | | |

## Conjugation of verbs

### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| want | يريد - يرغب | wanted | wanted |
| happen | يَحْدُث | happened | happened |
| jump up | يقفز لأعلى | jumped up | jumped up |
| push ... away | يدفع ... بعيدًا | pushed ... away | pushed ... away |
| scream | يصرخ | screamed | screamed |
| shout | يصيح | shouted | shouted |
| pour | يصبّ | poured | poured |
| pack up | يجمع أشيائه - يحزم أمتعته | packed up | packed up |
| work | يعمل | worked | worked |
| move across | يتحرك عبر | moved across | moved across |
| cry | يبكي | cried | cried |

### Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| shake | يهزّ - يرجّ | shook | shaken |
| hurt | يُؤلم | hurt | hurt |
| get up | يستيقظ | got up | got up |
| leave | يترك | left | left |

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| sit on | يجلس على | sat on | sat on |
| spend | يقضي (وقتًا) | spent | spent |
| go | يذهب | went | gone |
| know | يعرف - يعلم | knew | known |
| bite | يلدغ - يعضّ | bit | bitten |

## Definitions تعريفات S B Student's Book

| | |
|---|---|
| ***court*** | : This is a place where the pharaoh made important decisions. |
| ***herbs*** | : These are plants that people used in food or medicine. |
| ***papyrus*** | : This is a type of paper made from plants called reeds. |
| ***scribe*** | : This is a person who wrote about everything that happened in the pharaoh's court |
| ***script*** | : This is a piece of paper with information written on it. |
| ***tablet*** | : In schools in Ancient Egypt, young children wrote on this. |

## Read and learn

### The doctor comes to school



Nebsin didn't want to get up ❶. The sun was bright, but his bed was comfortable. "Nebsin!" Dad called. "Time for school!" Nebsin went into the kitchen. His mom was making breakfast, and his brother was playing. "Why do I have to go to school?" he said. "Babu plays all day.

❶ يستيقظ

His life is easy!" "Babu will start school next year, when he is seven," said his mom. "I'm going to the palace ❷, Nebsin," said Dad. "Let's walk together." They left the house. His father was a scribe ❸, who spent all day writing about everything that happened in the pharaoh's court ❹. "Did you like school, Dad?" asked Nebsin. "Of course! I wanted to learn to read and write, like you are doing." "Why did you want to be a scribe?" "My father was a scribe, and his father was a scribe. It's an important job. You will know what you want to be one day." Nebsin was confused ❺. He didn't know yet what job he wanted to do in the future. Later that morning, Nebsin was sitting on the floor, listening to the teacher and writing on his wooden tablet ❻. Suddenly, a boy jumped up and started shouting ❼. The [illegible]cher was shocked. "Sit down!" he said. "There's a snake!" somebody [illegible]ted. Everyone looked. A small, brown snake was moving across [illegible]ssroom floor. The boy tried to push the snake away, but it bit ❽ [illegible] hand and he screamed ❾. "Quick, Nebsin!" the teacher said. [illegible]tor. She'll know what to do." Nebsin and another boy [illegible]octor's building. She was sitting at a desk with rolls of papyrus ❿ [illegible] it. When they ran in, she was reading and writing notes. [illegible] A snake bit our friend!" shouted Nebsin. The doctor [illegible] her bag and some papyrus scripts ⓫. They ran to the [illegible]hool, where the boy was crying. His hand was red and sore ⓬. "Will he be OK, Doctor?" asked the teacher. "What kind of snake was it?" she asked, studying the boy's hand. "It was small, and brown, with dark circles," said Nebsin. The doctor looked at one of her papyrus [illegible] said, "Good. That snake isn't poisonous ⓭." She took some herbs ⓮ out of her bag, put them into a bottle of oil, and shook it. She poured ⓯ this onto a cloth ⓰. "Keep this on the bite," the doctor said.

❷ قصر
❸ ناسخ – كاتب
❹ بلاط الفرعون (قصر الفرعون)
❺ محتار
❻ لوح خشبي
❼ بدأ في الصراخ (الصياح)
❽ لدغ – عضّ
❾ صَرَخ
❿ لفافات من ورق البردي
⓫ مخطوطات – نصوص
⓬ ملتهب – متقرّح
⓭ سام – مسموم
⓮ أعشاب
⓯ صبّ – سَكَب
⓰ قطعة قماش

"It will hurt ⑰ for a while, but you won't get sick." Nebsin was amazed. He watched as the doctor packed up her papyrus scripts and her bag. "Excuse me. How did you learn to be a doctor?" he asked. "It takes a long time!" said the doctor. "If you want to be a doctor, you should work hard here at school!"

⑰ ستؤلمك

## Exercises on Lesson 7

### 1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

**tablet – pharaoh – scribe – court – palace**

Nebsin's father was a ❶ ........................, who spent all day writing about everything that happened in the pharaoh's ❷ ........................ . He was going to the ❸ ........................ when Nebsin went to school. Nebsin's dad wanted to learn to read and write. Later that morning, Nebsin was sitting on the floor, listening to the teacher and writing on his wooden ❹ ........................, but he didn't know yet what job he wanted to do in the future.

### 2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

**poisonous – bit – snake – shook – screamed**

Once in ancient Egypt, there was a snake moving across the classroom floor of one of the schools. It was a small, brown snake. A boy tried to push the snake away, but it ❶ ........................ his hand, and he ❷ ........................ . The teacher called a doctor. The doctor said that the snake wasn't ❸ ........................ . She took some herbs out of her bag, put them into a bottle of oil, and ❹ ........................ it. She poured this onto a cloth. She put this on the bite. "It would hurt for a while, but he wouldn't get sick," she said.

### 3 Choose the correct answer:

1. In schools in Ancient Egypt, young children wrote on wooden (tablets - herbs - bottles).





2. The (papyrus - script - tablet) is a type of paper made from plants called reeds.
3. The (pharaoh - scribe - script) is a person who wrote about everything that happened in the pharaoh's court.
4. The (corner - court - classroom) is a place where the pharaoh made important decisions.
5. The (herbs - papyrus - reeds) are plants that people used in food or medicine.
6. The (court - tablet - script) is a piece of paper with information written on it.
7. In ancient Egypt, they wrote on wooden (papyrus - tablets - notebooks).
8. When the snake bit his hand, he (screamed - laughed - relaxed).
9. She had rolls of (papyrus - scribe - tablets) to write in.
10. The (palace - temple - museum) is a place where kings and queens live.

## 4 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. How - future job - does - feel about - Nebsin - his?
   ▶ ................................................................................ ?
2. does - the bite - the doctor - on - put - What?
   ▶ ................................................................................ ?
3. was - on - writing - Nebsin - tablet - his wooden.
   ▶ ................................................................................ .
4. does - the - Nebsin - give to - What advice - doctor?
   ▶ ................................................................................ ?
5. you - did - Why - to be - want - a scribe?
   ▶ ................................................................................ ?
6. does - snake - the - What - like - look?
   ▶ ................................................................................ ?
7. does - What - Nebsin - brother - think about - his?
   ▶ ................................................................................ ?
8. did - you - a doctor - learn - How - to be?
   ▶ ................................................................................ ?








## Unit 3 Test 3

نصا الاستماع موجودان آخر كتاب الملحق.

### 1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (4Ms)



1. The Shagara at School project designs (red - yellow - green - blue) roofs for school in Egypt.
2. Green roofs are (houses - villas - gardens - apartments) on the top of a building.
3. Green roofs clean and cool the (soil - air - water - building).
4. Green roofs are (bad - sad - great - harmful) for the environment.

### 2 Listen and answer the questions: (2Ms)



1. Why is art good for your mind?

▶ ........................................................................................ .

2. What can you do in the art room?

▶ ........................................................................................ .

### 3 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue: (4Ms)

**Yara** : Hi, Lina. Where are you from?
**Lina** : Hi, Yara. I'm from Northern Siberia.
**Yara** : Can you tell me about people in your country?
**Lina** : Sure. People in the North of Siberia are ❶ ........................... . They don't live in one place.
**Yara** : How do they travel from one place to another?
**Lina** : They travel in sleds across the frozen lands and sleep in ❷ ......................... .
**Yara** : How do their children get an education?
**Lina** : They send their children away to ❸ ......................... school.
**Yara** : Is there another way of learning in your country?

Term 1





**Lina** : Yes. The second way is nomadic school which travels with the families. The classrooms are tents on the ice or
❹ ............................ rooms on wheels.

## 4 Read the following text and then answer the questions below: (4Ms)

A teacher's job at school is a very difficult one. A teacher should help every student in class to get the most out of what is explained. A teacher should draw their eyes and ears to the explanation in an enjoyable and easy way. A teacher should be all ears when listening to <u>their</u> questions. A successful teacher should be patient, hardworking, friendly and helpful. But it is not always that simple. It is very hard for any teacher to make forty or fifty students quiet and ready to hear what will be said all through the lesson. That is especially clear at the primary stage, where students are always noisy, active and childish.

### A Choose the correct answer:

1. The underlined word "<u>their</u>" refers to (teachers - students - jobs - schools).
2. The writer thinks the teacher's job is (noisy - childish - difficult - easy).

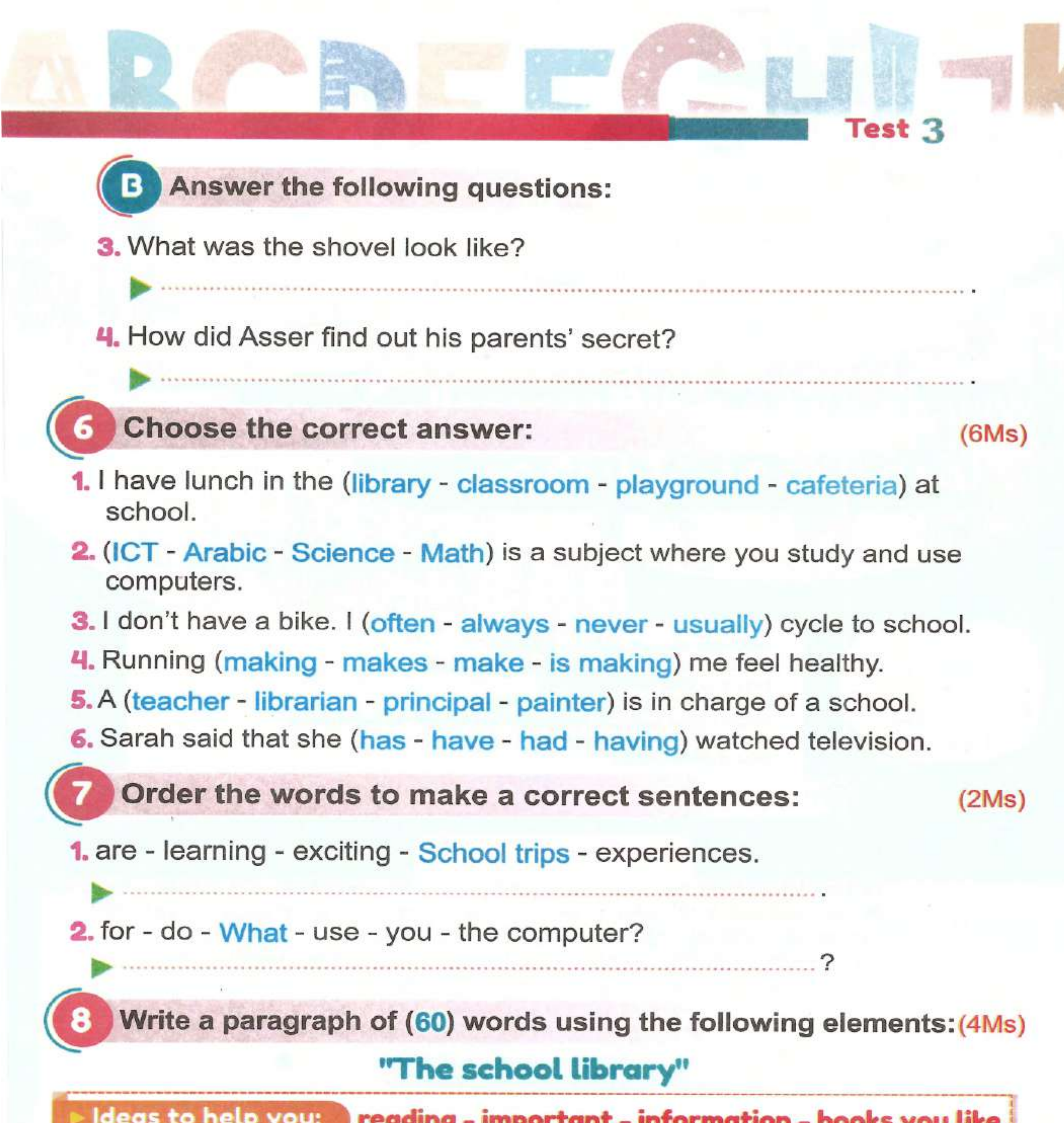
### B Answer these questions:

3. How are students at the primary stage different?
   ▶ ................................................................................................ .
4. How can a teacher be successful?
   ▶ ................................................................................................ .

## The Reader - A Wonderful Surprise

## 5 A- Read and write T (True) or F (False): (4Ms)

1. Asser saw his dad's shovel inside the garage. (   )
2. Shady and his dad were going to the park. (   )





## B Answer the following questions:

3. What was the shovel look like?

▶ .......................................................................................................................... .

4. How did Asser find out his parents' secret?

▶ .......................................................................................................................... .

## 6 Choose the correct answer: (6Ms)

1. I have lunch in the (library - classroom - playground - cafeteria) at school.
2. (ICT - Arabic - Science - Math) is a subject where you study and use computers.
3. I don't have a bike. I (often - always - never - usually) cycle to school.
4. Running (making - makes - make - is making) me feel healthy.
5. A (teacher - librarian - principal - painter) is in charge of a school.
6. Sarah said that she (has - have - had - having) watched television.

## 7 Order the words to make a correct sentences: (2Ms)

1. are - learning - exciting - School trips - experiences.

▶ .......................................................................................................... .

2. for - do - What - use - you - the computer?

▶ .......................................................................................................... ?

## 8 Write a paragraph of (60) words using the following elements: (4Ms)

### "The school library"

▶ Ideas to help you: reading - important - information - books you like - librarian - places of books - borrow - how often you go there

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

Term 1







In this unit I will ....

- describe myself and my friends.
- understand and use reported questions.
- listen to and give opinions.
- understand and use noun suffixes.
- understand and use the superlative form of adjectives.
- read and understand a play.
- take part in a play.
- write a detailed personal profile.
- read and understand a story.

## Objectives

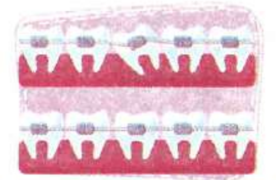
| | |
|---|---|
| Vocabulary | **Describing people:** braces, curly hair, glasses, hearing aid, mean, straight hair, wheelchair<br>**Methods of communication:** finger spelling, lip-reading, sign language, written notes<br>**Words with suffixes:** advertisement, information, kindness<br>**Other words:** cerebral palsy, crawl, decorate, herd, hunter, leader, movable (elbow), physiotherapist, prosthetic (arm), roar, route, walker |
| Language | **Reported questions:** - He asked us if we heard lots of sounds outside.<br>**Superlative adjectives:** - Science is the hardest subject for me.<br>- That was the worst test ever! |
| Reading | A story about a lesson; a play; a story about a special girl; a traditional story |
| Writing | A paragraph describing people; a detailed personal profile |
| Speaking | Discuss opinions on different topics; discuss what is the same and what is different between you and a partner; practice and present a play; discuss events in stories |
| Listening | A dialog about an amazing young man |
| Life skills | **Critical thinking:** comparing similarities and differences<br>**Self-expression:** writing a detailed personal profile |
| Values | - Tolerance and acceptance - Respect |
| Issues and challenges | - Non-discrimination - Citizenship |
| Integrated cross-curriculum topics | **Social studies:** ensuring everybody in a community helps each other |

# Lesson 1 Why we're all special



## Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس


**glasses** نظارة - نظارات


**braces** جهاز تقويم أسنان


**wheelchair** كرسي متحرك


**hearing aid** جهاز المساعدة على السمع


**curly hair** شعر مُجَعَّد


**straight hair** شعر ناعم - شعر أملس


**dark hair** شعر داكن (غامق)


**mean (n)** سيئ - شرير

## Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **special** | مُمَيَّز - استثنائي | **actually** | في الواقع - في الحقيقة |
| **different** | مختلف | **boring** | مُمِل - مُضْجِر |
| **teeth** | أسنان | **unkind** | فظّ - قاسٍ |
| **sports** | الرياضة | **equally** | بالتساوي - بشكلٍ متساوٍ - بالمِثل |
| **language classes** | حصص اللغة - دروس اللغة | **creative** | مبدع - إبداعي |
| **feeling a bit sad** | يشعر ببعض الحزن | **sporty** | شخص رياضي |

## Conjugation of verbs

### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| walk | يمشي | walked | walked |
| ask | يسأل | asked | asked |

Term 1

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| help | يساعد | helped | helped |
| laugh | يضحك | laughed | laughed |
| look after | يعتني بـ | looked after | looked after |
| imagine | يتخيل | imagined | imagined |
| agree | يوافق | agreed | agreed |
| try | يحاول | tried | tried |

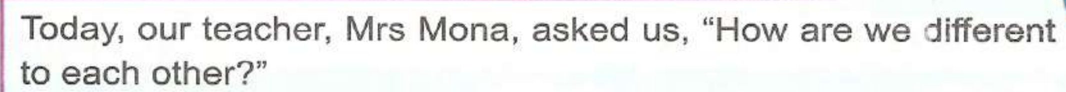
## Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| tell | يخبر | told | told |
| get straight | تصبح مستقيمة | got straight | got straight |
| wear | يرتدي | wore | worn |
| forget | ينسى | forgot | forgotten |
| see | يرى | saw | seen |

### Did you know? هل تعلم؟

Some people can read with their fingers! Louis Braille invented the Braille writing system when he was only fifteen!

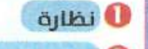
بعض الناس يمكنهم القراءة بأصابعهم! ابتكر لويس برايل نظام الكتابة بطريقة برايل عندما كان في سن الخامسة عشر فقط!



### Why we're all special

by Reem

Today, our teacher, Mrs Mona, asked us, "How are we different to each other?"



1. نظارة
2. جهاز تقويم أسنان
3. كرسي متحرك
4. جهاز المساعدة على السمع

That's an easy question to answer! Asser is very tall. He's taller than everyone else in the class. I'm very short. I have green eyes and Asser has brown eyes. Seleem's hair is curly, but Waleed's hair is very straight, and he wears glasses ❶. Injy wears braces ❷ to help her teeth get straight. Amal uses a wheelchair ❸ because she cannot walk well. Amina has a hearing aid ❹ because she has problems hearing.

We have different families, too – I have three sisters, but my best friend Amal has two brothers! My friend Dalia loves sports, but I prefer language classes.



Mrs Mona teaching our class

Then, Mrs Mona asked us to tell our friend about something that makes them special. I told Amal I love her curly hair ❺ and the way she helps me with math – she's the best at math in the class! And Amal told me she loves the way I make her laugh when she's feeling a bit sad.

Mrs Mona said, "Imagine a world where we're all the same. What would it be like?"

"Actually," said Sherif, "I think it would be a bit boring."

"Yes," said Sally, "it would be really boring."

"And imagine if everyone was good at the same things?" said Mrs Mona.
"Well, then it wouldn't be very exciting," I said.

"It's good that everyone is different," said Mrs Mona. "We don't look the same because our families are different. Some of us are tall, some short, some have curly hair, and some have straight hair ❻.

Some of us have two brothers and sisters, and others have three. Some of us are good at music, and others are good at sports." Everyone agreed.

"The important thing is that we look after each other in our classroom. People shouldn't be unkind to someone because they're different. Our school is for everyone – we are all equally important," said Mrs Mona.

"But what should we do if we see someone being mean ❼ at school?" asked Injy. "I saw someone being unkind to Tarek the other day because he forgot his glasses, and so he couldn't see well."

"You should always come and see me, or another teacher," said Mrs Mona. "Here at school we should all help each other."

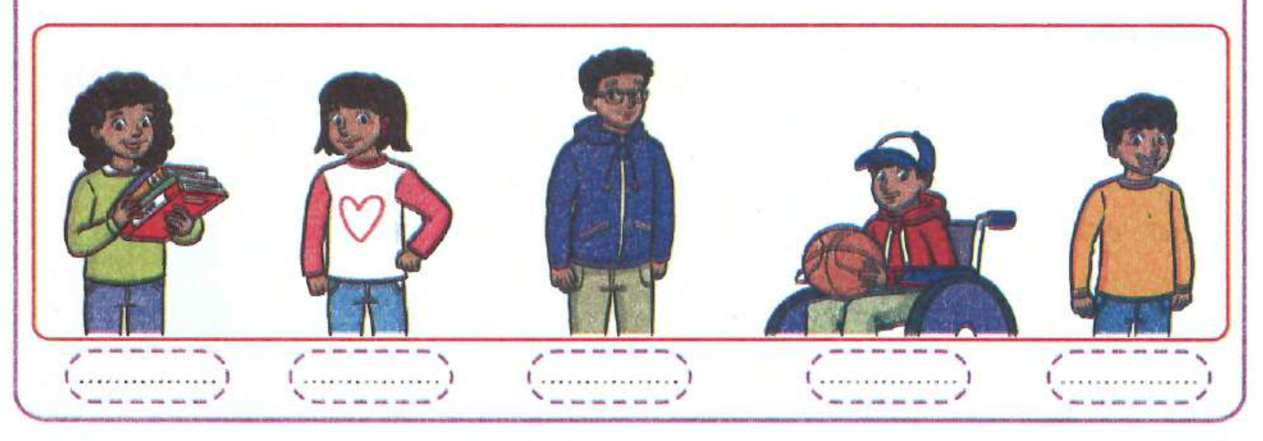
❺ شعر مُجَعَّد
❻ شعر ناعم - شعر أملس
❼ سيئ - لئيم - شرير





## Activity Read and write the names:

These are my friends at school. Shady is tall and wears glasses. He's very creative and likes drawing. Laila is very kind – she helps everybody. She has straight hair. She can't hear very well, so she wears a hearing aid. Amira loves drama and has curly dark hair. She also loves reading and always has books in her hands. Hesham is very sporty, and he's in the wheelchair basketball team. Seleem is great at math. He has short hair and wears braces.





................ ................ ................ ................ ................

## Exercises on Lesson 1

### 1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

**glasses – braces – wheelchair – straight – hearing aid**

We don't look the same because our families are different. Asser is very tall. He's taller than everyone else in the class. I'm very short. I have green eyes and Asser has brown eyes. Seleem's hair is curly, but Waleed's hair is very ❶ ........................., and he wears glasses. Injy wears ❷ ......................... to help her teeth get straight. Amal uses a ❸ ......................... because she cannot walk well. Amina has a ❹ ......................... because she has problems hearing. It's good that everyone is different.

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

sports – mean – different – kind – glasses

Everyone is ❶ .............................. . Some of us have two brothers and sisters, and others have three. Some of us are good at art, and others are good at ❷ .............................. . The important thing is that we look after each other in our classroom. People shouldn't be ❸ .............................. to someone because they're different. I saw someone being unkind to my friend because he forgot his ❹ .............................., and so he couldn't see well. I felt sad about that.

## 3 Choose the correct answer:

1. The opposite of curly is (street - straight - blonde).
2. Injy wears (hearing aid - braces - glasses) to help her teeth get straight.
3. Amal uses a (braces - wheelchair - hearing aid) because she cannot walk well.
4. Amina has a (hearing aid - glasses - braces) because she has problems hearing.
5. Tarek forgot his (wheelchair - hearing aid - glasses), so he couldn't see well.
6. When someone is (kind - good - mean), he's unkind to others.

## 4 Read the following text and answer the questions:

I have so many friends. They are all different. Shady is tall. He wears glasses. He's very creative and likes drawing. Laila is very kind – she helps everybody. She has straight hair. She can't hear very well, so she wears a hearing aid. Amira likes drama and has curly dark hair. She also likes reading and always has books in her hands. Hesham is very sporty, and he's in the wheelchair basketball team. Seleem is great at math. He has short hair and wears braces.

## A Choose the correct answer:

1. Shady wears (braces - hearing aid - glasses).
2. Amira likes (drama - drawing - sports).

## B Answer these questions:

3. What's Seleem's favorite subject? ▶ ........................................ .
4. What sport does Hesham like most? ▶ ........................................ .

## 5 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. different - are - we - How - each other - to?
   ▶ ........................................................................................ ?
2. taller - is - Asser - in the class - everyone else - than.
   ▶ ........................................................................................ .
3. at school - each - should all - other - We - help.
   ▶ ........................................................................................ .
4. equally - important - We - are all.
   ▶ ........................................................................................ .
5. is - everyone - Our - for - school.
   ▶ ........................................................................................ .
6. good - It's - everyone - that - different - is.
   ▶ ........................................................................................ .

## 6 Write a paragraph of (60) words using the following elements:

**"The different people I know"**

**▶ Ideas to help you:** friends - neighbors - relatives - tall - short - eyes - hair - hearing aid - braces - wheelchair - kind - all important

..........................................................................................
..........................................................................................
..........................................................................................



## Lesson 2 Language



### Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



**disability** إعاقة - عَجز



**hearing difficulties** صعوبات في السمع



**communicate with** يتواصل مع



**way of communicating** طريقة للتواصل



**sign language** لغة الإشارة



**lip-reading** قراءة الشفاه



**chin** ذقن



**forehead** جبهة - جَبين

### Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| expressions | تعبيرات | loud noises | ضوضاء صاخبة |
| sounds | أصوات | quiet noises | ضوضاء منخفضة |
| ideas | أفكار | move it away | يحركها بعيدًا |
| cat meowing | مواء القطط | whiteboard | سبورة بيضاء |

## Conjugation of verbs

### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| talk | يتحدث | talked | talked |
| happen | يَحْدُث | happened | happened |
| guess | يُخَمِّن | guessed | guessed |

Term 1

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| press | يضغط | pressed | pressed |
| smile | يبتسم | smiled | smiled |
| invite | يدعو - يعزم | invited | invited |
| communicate | يتواصل | communicated | communicated |
| move | يتحرك - يُحَرِّك | moved | moved |
| underline | يضع خطًا (تحت كلمة) | underlined | underlined |

**Irregular verbs** أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| hear | يسمع | heard | heard |
| say | يقول | said | said |
| think | يعتقد - يفكر | thought | thought |
| come | يأتي | came | come |

## Ways of communicating

Today, our teacher invited an interesting person called Mr Kamal to come and talk to us in class. Mr Kamal told us about the best ways to **communicate** (1) with people who have **hearing difficulties** (2).

First, he asked us what sounds we heard every day. We had lots of ideas. My friend Adam said he heard other people talking, and I said I heard our cat **meowing** (3) in the morning!

Then, Mr Kamal asked what we thought would happen if we couldn't hear well. It really made us think! Adam asked if we would only be able to hear **loud noises** (4). Mr Kamal said that he was right. It is difficult to hear quiet noises.

Next, Mr Kamal asked us what ways we communicate with each other. We thought there were lots of ways. I said that talking was a way of communicating. Adam said that using **expressions** (5), like smiling, was another.

Younis said that writing messages on his phone was his favorite way to communicate. Then, Mr Kamal told us about a really clever way to communicate! Can you **guess** (6) what it is?

1. يتواصل
2. صعوبات في السمع
3. مواء القطة
4. ضوضاء صاخبة
5. تعبيرات
6. يُخَمِّن





# Grammar Study



## Reported speech (Questions)
## تحويل الجملة الاستفهامية إلى كلام غير مباشر

### The steps

■ خطوات تحويل الجملة الاستفهمية إلى كلام غير مباشر .

1. We use a reporting verb (**asked**).

1. نبدأ بمن سأل السؤال متبوعًا بالفعل (**asked**).

2. We omit the quotation marks, and we use the same question word, which is in the direct question.

2. نحذف علامتي التنصيص والفاصلة (" " - ,) ونستخدم نفس أداة الاستفهام كرابط .

3. If the question is a (**yes** or **no**) one, we use (**if**) instead of the question word.

3. إذا كان السؤال يبدأ بفعل مساعد نستخدم (**if**) كرابط.

4. The verb comes after the subject, as in ordinary statements.

4. تُحَوَّل الصيغة الاستفهامية إلى خبرية بأن نضع الفاعل قبل الفعل المساعد.

5. We change pronouns and possessive adjectives according to the meaning.

5. تُحَوَّل الضمائر وصفات الملكية على حسب معنى الجملة .

6. We change the tenses from present to past and omit the question word.

6. تُحَوَّل الأزمنة من المضارع إلى الماضي وتُحْذَف علامة الاستفهام.

**Examples:**

- Heba asked, "Where does Esraa go on Fridays?"
  - ▶ Heba **asked where Esraa went** on Fridays.
- "What are you doing, Tamer?" asked Ayman.
  - ▶ Ayman **asked** Tamer **what he was** doing.
- The mother asked, "Have you finished your homework, Hend?"
  - ▶ The mother **asked** Hend **if she had** finished **her** homework.
- Gamal said to me, "Will you share our project with us?"
  - ▶ Gamal **asked if I would** share **their** project with them.

## Exercises on Lesson 

### 1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:




Mr Kamal ❶ .............................. us what sounds we heard every day. We had lots of ideas. My friend Adam said he ❷ .......................... other people talking, and I said I heard our cat meowing in the morning! Then, Mr Kamal asked what we thought would happen if we ❸ .............................. hear well. It really made us think! Adam asked ❹ .............................. we would only be able to hear loud noises. Mr Kamal said that he was right. It is difficult to hear quiet noises.

### 2 Choose the correct answer: (Vocabulary)




1. She asked (what happened - what happens) if you couldn't hear quiet noises. SB
2. He asked (we could - if we could) all see the whiteboard. SB
3. "How do you communicate at school?"
   ▶ She asked (how we communicated - if we communicate) at school. SB
4. "Do you know how to use sign language?" SB
   ▶ He asked (did I know - if I knew) how to use sign language.
5. "Do you hear lots of sounds outside?"
   ▶ He asked us (if we heard - we heard - did you heard) lots of sounds outside.
6. "What sounds do you hear every day?"
   ▶ He asked us what sounds (did we hear - we heard - if we heard) every day.
7. Mr Kamal (said - asked - told) what we thought would happen if we couldn't hear well.
8. Adam asked if we (has - have - had) a house in the country.
9. Mr Kamal (told - said - asked) us in what ways we communicated with each other.

10. Mr Kamal asked us if we (could guess - can guess - guess) what it was.
11. Mrs Mona asked (how were we - how we were - how did we) different to each other.
12. The teacher asked the doctor (the boy would - if would the boy - if the boy would) be OK.
13. He asked me (why I wanted - what I wanted - why did I want) to be a scribe.
14. Lina asked what (are they - they were - they are) going to do.
15. Sameh asked who (Monira was - was Monira - is Monira).
16. Sameh asked (how - if - what) I thought they were happy.
17. Nadine asked if (was the house - the house was - the house is) different then.
18. He asked (why you are - why were you - why you were) asking that.
19. Mom asked what (you were - were you - are you) doing.
20. His teacher asked (I could - if I could - if I can) think of something.

## 3 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. whiteboard - you all - see - the - Can?
   ▶ ............................................................?
2. school - at - communicate - you - do - How?
   ▶ ............................................................?
3. lots of - you - outside - Do - sounds - hear?
   ▶ ............................................................?
4. guess - you - Can - is - it - what?
   ▶ ............................................................?
5. ideas - of - lots - had - We.
   ▶ ............................................................ .
6. how - you - know - Do - sign language - to use?
   ▶ ............................................................?



Unit 4

# Lesson 3 Amazing David!



## Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس





**prosthetic arm**
ذراع صناعي (اصطناعي)



**movable elbow**
كوع (مِرْفَق) متحرك



**opinions**
آراء - وجهات نظر



**facts**
حقائق

## Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **amazing** | مذهل - مدهش | **video games** | ألعاب الفيديو |
| **expensive** | غالٍ | **making animations** | يصنع أفلام رسوم متحركة |
| **cheap** | رخيص | **comic books** | قصص مُصورة |
| **clever** | ذكي - ماهر | **drawing** | الرسم |
| **fantastic** | رائع | **painting** | التلوين |
| **diagram** | مُخَطّط بياني | **is made of** | مصنوع من |
| **plans** | خُطَط | **drawing cartoons** | رسم الشخصيات الكرتونية |

## Conjugation of verbs

### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| play | يلعب | played | played |
| paint | يُلَوِّن - يطلي | painted | painted |
| listen | يستمع | listened | listened |
| describe | يَصِف - يشرح | described | described |



## Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| read | يقرأ | read | read |
| make | يصنع - يجعل | made | made |
| write | يكتب | wrote | written |
| draw | يرسم | drew | drawn |

## Read and learn

### Expressing opinions



What do you think about David?



In my opinion, he's very clever.



I think David's family is interesting. What do you think?



To me, they are very interesting, too.



What about his plans for the future?



I think that his plans to help others are fantastic.





## make

- Use **"make(s) me"** to talk about how you feel because of something or someone.

**subject + make(s) me + adjective**

▶ I have some friends. I am happy. ▶▶▶ My friends make me happy.

- You can also use **"make me"** with a verb to talk about how you feel because of an activity.
- Use the verb + -ing as the subject of the sentence.

▶ I run. I get healthy. ▶▶▶ Running makes me feel healthy.

▶ I play tennis. I get healthy. ▶▶▶ Playing tennis makes me feel healthy.

## Exercises on Lesson 3

### 1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:



**disability – arm – movable – plastic – cheap**

David Aguilar Amphoux is very clever. He made his prosthetic ❶ .................................. with a movable elbow. David's prosthetic arm is made of ❷ .................................. . Most prosthetic arms are expensive, but David can make them ❸ .................................. . David's message for other people is "A ❹ .................................. shouldn't stop you".

### 2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

**Sarah** : Hi Mazen! Have you heard about David Aguilar Amphoux?

**Mazen** : Oh, hi Sarah! Yes, he is an amazing ❶ .......................... .

**Sarah** : What do you think about David?

**Mazen** : In my ❷ .........................., he's very clever.

**Sarah** : Why do you think that?

**Mazen** : David made his prosthetic arm with a movable ❸ .......................... .





**Sarah** : I think David's family is interesting.

**Mazen** : To me, they are very interesting, too.

**Sarah** : What about his ❹ .................... for the future?

**Mazen** : I think he has plans to help others. They're fantastic plans.

## 3 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. football - about - think - you - do - What?
   ▶ .................................................................................... ?
2. he's - clever - opinion, - In - very - my.
   ▶ .................................................................................... .
3. the future - for - plans - his - about - What?
   ▶ .................................................................................... ?
4. David's - think - I - interesting - is - family.
   ▶ .................................................................................... .
5. think - do - David - What - about - you?
   ▶ .................................................................................... ?

## 4 Write an email to your friend Tom:

Tell him about yourself, your family, your school and your hobbies. Your email address is amgad@hotmail.com. Your friend's email address is tom@gmail.com.

From:

To:

Subject:

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

# Lesson 4 Can I work with you?

## Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



**researching information** البحث عن المعلومات



**kindness** طِيبة - لُطف



**advertisement** إعلان - دعاية





**tropical rainforests** غابات استوائية مطيرة

| Word | | Noun | |
|---|---|---|---|
| agree | يتَّفق - يوافق | agreement | اتفاقية |
| happy | سعيد | happiness | السعادة |
| entertain | يُسَلِّي | entertainment | الترفيه - التسلية |
| transport | ينقل | transportation | النقل |
| ill | مريض | illness | مَرَض |
| relax | يسترخي - يستريح | relaxing | الاسترخاء |

## Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| groups | مجموعات | excellent | ممتاز |
| posters | ملصقات - بوسترات | design (n) | تصميم |
| colorful | مُلَوَّن | finding photos | إيجاد الصور |
| interesting information | معلومات شيِّقة (مُشَوِّقة) | draw pictures | يرسم صور |
| work together | يعملون سويًا | already | بالفعل |

## Conjugation of verbs

### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| entertain | يُسَلّي | entertained | entertained |
| transport | ينقل | transported | transported |
| start | يبدأ | started | started |
| work with | يعمل مع | worked with | worked with |
| present | يُقَدّم - يعرض | presented | presented |
| relax | يسترخي - يستريح | relaxed | relaxed |
| live | يعيش | lived | lived |
| smile | يبتسم | smiled | smiled |
| love | يحب | loved | loved |

### Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| feel | يشعر - يحس | felt | felt |
| find | يجد | found | found |
| get in | يدخل في | got in | got in |
| show | يعرض - يُبَيّن | showed | shown |

### Read and learn

## Can I work with you?

**Mrs Randa** : OK, everyone, I want you to get into ❶ groups to make posters ❷ about animals that live in tropical rainforests ❸. It should be an advertisement ❹ for the rainforest. I would like colorful posters with lots of interesting information. You can get in your groups now. I'd like everyone to work together and don't forget – kindness ❺ is important.

❶ تدخلوا في
❷ ملصقات - بوسترات
❸ الغابات الاستوائية المطيرة
❹ إعلان - دعاية
❺ طيبة - رحمة

Grade 6 children working on a poster

**Fares** : Tamer, Gameela, Wael, can I work with you?

**Tamer** : Oh no, sorry. We're already working with Magdy. Magdy, come here!

**Magdy** : I'm coming!

**Fares** : Sherif and Lamar, can I work with you?

**Sherif** : Er no, we're working with Fareeda.

Fares starts to feel a bit sad and goes to talk to Mrs Randa.

**Fares** : I can't find a group to work with, Mrs Randa. Everyone has their group.

**Mrs Randa** : Oh dear! Of course we can find you someone. Let's go and talk to Amira. Amira, who are you working with in your group?

**Amira** : I'm working with Samer and Mariam, but we need someone else.

**Mrs Randa** : Excellent! Here's Fares!

**Amira** : Hi, Fares! What would you like to do for the poster?

**Fares** : I'd love to draw the pictures!

**Amira** : That's fantastic! I'm good at writing, Samer is good at design ❻, and Mariam is great at researching information ❼ and finding photos ❽. If you can draw pictures, then we will make a very good team! A little later ...

**Mrs Randa** : These posters are beautiful. Who did these lovely pictures?

**Samer** : That was Fares, Mrs Randa – he really worked hard to make our poster. Fares smiles and looks very proud.

❻ التصميم
❼ البحث عن المعلومات
❽ إيجاد الصور








## Exercises on Lesson 4

### 1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

**information – rainforests – kindness – colorful – advertisement**

I want you to get into groups to make posters about animals that live in tropical ❶ .............................. . It should be an ❷ .............................. for the rainforest. I would like colorful posters with lots of interesting ❸ .............................. . You can get in your groups now. I'd like everyone to work together and don't forget – ❹ .............................. is important.

### 2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

**Mrs Randa** : OK, everyone, I want you to get into groups to make posters. It should be an ❶ ........................ for the rainforest.

**Fares** : Tamer, Gameela, Wael, can I work with you?

**Tamer** : Oh no, sorry. We're already working with Magdy.

**Fares** : Sherif and Lamar, can I ❷ ........................ with you?

**Sherif** : Er no, we're working with Fareeda.

**Fares** : I can't find a group to work with, Mrs Randa.

**Mrs Randa** : Oh dear! Don't worry. Amira, who are you working with in your group?

**Amira** : I'm working with Samer and Mariam, but we need someone else.

**Mrs Randa** : Excellent! Here's Fares!

**Amira** : Hi, Fares! What would you like to do for the poster?

**Fares** : I'd love to draw the ❸ ........................!

**Amira** : That's fantastic! I'm good at writing, Samer is good at design, and Mariam is great at researching ❹ ........................ and finding photos.

### 3 Choose the correct answer:

1. He was very (ill - illness).
2. His (ill - illness) was very dangerous.

3. Helping people gives me much (happy - happiness).
4. I'm very (happy - happiness) when I help people.
5. I always (agree - agreement) with most of my dad's opinion.
6. The posters should be an (advertise - advertisement) for the rainforest.
7. Don't forget – (kindness - kind) is important.
8. Mariam is great at researching (inform - information) and finding photos.
9. The children made interesting (posters - photos) and put them on the classroom walls.
10. You can get in your (advertisements - groups) now. I'd like everyone to work together.

## 4 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. you - with - work - I - Can?
   ▶ ............................................................ ?
2. like - I'd - to - everyone - together - work.
   ▶ ............................................................ .
3. draw - pictures - to - I'd - the - love!
   ▶ ............................................................ !
4. beautiful - are - posters - These.
   ▶ ............................................................ .
5. working - are - Who - group - you - in your - with?
   ▶ ............................................................ ?
6. a very - will - team - We - good - make!
   ▶ ............................................................ !
7. talk - does - Fares - to - Why - Mrs Randa?
   ▶ ............................................................ ?
8. feel - sad - to - Fares - a bit - starts.
   ▶ ............................................................ .
9. and - talk - Amira - Let's - to - go.
   ▶ ............................................................ .
10. design - at - good - is - Samer.
   ▶ ............................................................ .

## Lesson 5 Language



### Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



**elephants** فِيَلَة - أفيال



**mice** فئران



**herd** قطيع - سِرب



**roar (v)** يزأر - يُصدر صوتًا عاليًا



**leader** قائد - زعيم



**hunters** الصيادون



**route** طريق - مسار



**path** طريق - ممر

### Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **king** | مَلِك | **needs (n)** | احتياجات - متطلبات |
| **queen** | مَلِكة | **got caught** | عَلِقَ في (فخ - مصيدة) - تم الإمساك به |
| **mouse** | فأر | **difference** | اختلاف |
| **during the day** | خلال النهار - أثناء النهار | **the proudest** | الأكثر فخرًا |
| **lake** | بحيرة | **kind** | طيب - حنون |
| **village** | قرية | **shocked** | مصدوم - مذهول |
| **members** | أعضاء - أفراد | **close to** | قريب من |
| **community** | مجتمع | **one day** | في أحد الأيام |
| **difficult situation** | موقف صعب | **after a while** | بعد مدة - بعد فترة |

# Conjugation of verbs

## Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| roar | يزأر | roared | roared |
| respect | يحترم | respected | respected |
| explain | يُوَضِّح - يشرح | explained | explained |
| change | يُغَيِّر - يتغير | changed | changed |
| continue | يستمر - يُواصِل | continued | continued |
| hope | يأمل - يتمنى | hoped | hoped |
| nod | يومئ برأسه | nodded | nodded |

## Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| hurt | يجرح - يُؤلم | hurt | hurt |
| meet | يقابل | met | met |
| catch | يُمسك | caught | caught |
| hear | يسمع | heard | heard |
| mean | يعني - يقصد | meant | meant |
| go | يذهب | went | gone |
| swim | يَسْبَح - يعوم | swam | swum |
| bite | يعضّ - يقضم - يَقْرِض | bit | bitten |
| get out | يخرج (من شيء) | got out | got out |

## Definitions تعريفات SB Student's Book

| | |
|---|---|
| ***leader*** | : the most powerful person or animal in a group, for example, a king or queen |
| ***herd*** | : a group of elephants |
| ***hunter*** | : a person who tries to catch or kill wild animals |
| ***roar*** | : to make a very loud noise |
| ***route*** | : a path or a way to go somewhere |

## Read and learn

### The elephants and the mice



Many years ago, a herd ❶ of elephants lived in India. They were happy, and their leader ❷, the queen, was the kindest and best of the elephants. During the day, it was very hot, and the elephants liked to swim in the lake.

Near that lake, there was an old village.

Nobody lived in the village now, but there were hundreds of mice ❸. Their leader, the king, was kind. The elephants and the mice lived well together.

But, one day, the elephants changed their route ❹ to the lake. This meant they walked along a path ❺ that was too close to ❻ the mice. Many of the elephants didn't see the mice. They walked on them and hurt them ❼.

After a while, the mice said to the mouse king, "This cannot continue! It isn't safe for us!" The mouse king said, "Don't worry – I'll talk to the elephant queen," and he went to see her.

The mouse king met the elephant queen and explained the problem. She was shocked ❽ to hear what was happening and agreed to go a different route.

"Thank you for listening and respecting our needs," said the mouse king, "One day, I hope we can help you if you're in a difficult situation ❾."

The elephant queen nodded ❿. but thought, "We elephants are the most powerful animals in India – why would we need help from little mice?"

A few weeks later, some hunters ⓫ were watching the elephants and left nets ⓬. The next day, when the elephants went to the lake, they got caught ⓭ in the nets. They couldn't move, and they roared ⓮ and roared, making the loudest noise. The mice heard the loud noise and came running.

1. قطيع - سرب
2. قائد - زعيم
3. فئران
4. طريق - دَرْب
5. طريق - ممر
6. قريب جدًا من
7. آذوهم
8. مصدوم
9. موقف صعب
10. أومأت برأسها - هزّت رأسها
11. صيادون
12. شِباك (للصيد)
13. عَلِق (في شبكة أو في فخ)
14. زأر (أصدر صوتًا عاليًا)

Quickly, they started biting ⑮ the nets. The elephants could get out ⑯!
The next day, the elephant queen came to see the mouse king and said, "Thank you so much! You saved ⑰ some elephants from the hunters! You showed us that all members of our community, from the biggest to the smallest, can make a difference."
The mouse king felt like the happiest and proudest ⑱ mouse in the village!

⑮ بدأوا في قضم (قرض)
⑯ يخرج
⑰ أنقذتم
⑱ الأكثر فخرًا

# Grammar Study



## (Adjectives) Comparison المقارنة

### Remember

**Comparative degree:**

- We use the comparative form to compare two people, two animals or two things.
- تُستخدم الدرجة الثانية من المقارنة (الصفات) لنقارن بين شخص وشخص أو حيوان وحيوان أو شيء وشيء ..... وهكذا.
  - My uncle is older than my dad.
- We add (er) to the short adjective and use the word (than) after it.
- نُضيف للصفة القصيرة (er) ونضع بعدها كلمة (than من).
  - The horse is taller than the dog.

- We use (more) or (less) before long adjectives and the word (than) after them.
- إذا كانت الصفة طويلة، نضع قبلها إما (more) أو (less) وبعدها (than).
  - A snake is more dangerous than a fox.
  - A fox is less dangerous than a snake.

**Superlative degree:**

- We use the superlative form to compare more than two people, animals or things.
- تُستخدم الدرجة الثالثة من المقارنة (الصفات) للمقارنة بين شخص ومجموعة من الأشخاص، أو حيوان ومجموعة من الحيوانات، أو شيء ومجموعة من الأشياء..... وهكذا.
  - Their leader was the kindest of the elephants.





- We add (est) to the short adjective and use the word (the) before it.
- أضيف للصفة القصيرة (est) ونضع قبلها كلمة (the).

▶ The mouse king felt like the proudest mouse in the village!

---

- When the adjective ends in (e), we add (st).
- إذا انتهت الصفة بـ (e)، نضيف لها (st) فقط.

large ▶▶▶ largest nice ▶▶▶ nicest fine ▶▶▶ finest

▶ The living room is the largest one in our apartment.

---

- When the adjective ends in a consonant after one vowel, we double the final consonant before adding (est).
- إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف ساكن يسبقه حرف واحد متحرك ناطق، نضاعف الحرف الأخير الساكن قبل إضافة (est).

big ▶▶▶ biggest fat ▶▶▶ fattest
thin ▶▶▶ thinnest hot ▶▶▶ hottest

▶ The elephant is the biggest land animal.

---

- When the adjective ends in (y), we change the (y) into (i) before adding (est).
- إذا انتهت الصفة بـ (y) تُحوّل إلى (i) قبل إضافة (est).

heavy ▶▶▶ heaviest easy ▶▶▶ easiest happy ▶▶▶ happiest
noisy ▶▶▶ noisiest scary ▶▶▶ scariest

▶ The hippo is one of the heaviest animals.

---

- We use (the most) before long adjectives.
- إذا كانت الصفة طويلة، نضع قبلها (the most).

▶ We elephants are the most powerful animals in India.



## Irregular Adjectives

- We have some irregular adjectives like (good - bad).
- يوجد بعض الصفات الشاذة التي لا تنطبق عليها القواعد السابقة مثل **(bad - good)**.

| 1 | 2 | 3 |
|---|---|---|
| good | better (than) | (the) best |
| bad | worse (than) | (the) worst |

- Maher is a good chef.
- Tamer is better than Maher at cooking.
- Ayman is the best chef in the hotel.

- My project this time is bad.
- My project this time is worse than the last project.
- My project this time is the worst one I've ever made.

## Exercises on Lesson 5

### 1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

**herd – kindest – leader – route – hurt**



Many years ago, a ❶ ...................... of elephants lived in India. They were happy, and their ❷ ......................, the queen, was the ❸ ...................... and best of the elephants. During the day, it was very hot, and the elephants liked to swim in the lake. But, one day, the elephants changed their ❹ ...................... to the lake. This meant they walked along a path that was too close to the mice. Many of the elephants didn't see the mice. They walked on them and hurt them.

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

**hunters – proudest – difference – members – biggest**

The elephant queen came to see the mouse king and said, "Thank you so much! You saved some elephants from the ❶ ……………………! You showed us that all ❷ …………………… of our community, from the ❸ …………………… to the smallest, can make a difference." The mouse king felt like the happiest and ❹ …………………… mouse in the village!

## 3 Choose the correct answer: (Vocabulary)

1. The (hunter - leader - herd) is the most powerful person or animal in a group, for example, a king or queen.
2. A (herd - class - route) is a group of elephants.
3. The (hunter - leader - fisherman) is a person who tries to catch or kill wild animals.
4. To (roar - talk - speak) means to make a very loud noise.
5. The (route - floor - roof) is a path or a way to go somewhere.
6. (Elephants - Mice - Lions) are very small animals.

## 4 Choose the correct answer: (Structures)

1. January is often the (cold - colder - coldest) month of the year here in Egypt.
2. The Nile crocodile is the (more dangerous - most dangerous - dangerous) animal in Egypt.
3. Gameela is the (happy - happiest - happier) girl in the class – she's always laughing.
4. That man is the (best - better - good) chef in our city.
5. It was the (bad - worse - worst) vacation – it rained the whole time!





6. Lake Nasser is the (biggest - bigger - big) lake in Egypt.
7. The queen was the (kind - kinder - kindest) and best of the elephants.
8. Elephants thought they are (powerful - more powerful than - the most powerful) animals in India.
9. What's the (easiest - easier - easy) subject for you?
10. The yellow flower is the (most beautiful - more beautiful - beautiful) one in the garden.
11. The blue skirt is (expensive - more expensive - the most expensive) than the white skirt.
12. What's (difficult - more difficult than - the most difficult) test this month?
13. My mom is the (good - better - best) cook in the world.
14. The mouse king felt like the (proud - prouder - proudest) mouse in the village!
15. Amgad is (fast - faster than - the fastest) his friend Magdy.
16. Do you think the lion is the (most dangerous - more dangerous - dangerous) animal in the world?

## 5 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. the lake - in - The elephants - swim - to - liked.
   ▶ ................................................................................ .
2. out - get - could - elephants - The!
   ▶ ................................................................................ !
3. the mice - elephants - Many of the - see - didn't.
   ▶ ................................................................................ .
4. and respecting - you - our needs - listening - Thank - for.
   ▶ ................................................................................ .
5. the elephants - help - the mice - did - How?
   ▶ ................................................................................ ?

# Lesson 6 Writing a personal profile

## Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



**personal profile** ملف تعريف شخصي



**blog** مُدَوَّنة إلكترونية



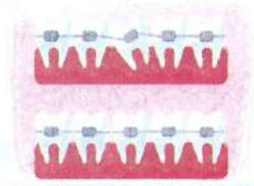
**countryside** الريف



**hobbies** هوايات



**dentist** طبيب أسنان



**braces** جهاز تقويم الأسنان



**changes (n)** تغييرات - تعديلات




**keen on** حريص على

## Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **meeting up** | لقاء - مقابلة | **games** | مباريات |
| **quite tall** | طويل بعض الشيء | **chart** | مُخَطَّط بياني - جدول بياني |
| **into photography** | مهتم بالتصوير - يُحب التصوير | **clear (adj)** | واضح |
| **into sports** | مهتم بالرياضة - يُحب الرياضة | **correct (adj)** | صحيح - سليم |
| **local club** | نادي محلي | **all over the world** | كل أنحاء العالم |
| **comments (n)** | تعليقات - ملاحظات | **once a month** | مرة في الشهر |

## Conjugation of verbs

### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| report | يُبْلِغ - يرسل تقرير | reported | reported |
| add | يضيف | added | added |

## Unit 4

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| arrange | يُرَتِّب - يُنَظِّم | arranged | arranged |
| introduce | يُقَدِّم | introduced | introduced |
| improve | يُحَسِّن - يُطَوِّر | improved | improved |

### The elephants and the mice



Hi everybody!

How are things?

My name's Dalia. I'm eleven, and I live in Alexandria. I go to school at Alex Modern School. It's a great school, and I have great friends.

I'm quite tall, and I have long brown hair. I wear braces (1). I have an older brother and an older sister, so they call me the baby of the family!

I'm keen on (2) walking with my family and friends, and the countryside (3) near where I live is really amazing. I'm into photography (4). I like taking photos (5) of all the beautiful things I see in the countryside.

I also love listening to music from my country and all over the world (6).

As well as this, I'm really into sports. I play volleyball at my local club (7), and we have games about once a month (8).

On the weekend, I love going to the mall (9) with my friends and family, and then I go to my grandma's to watch movies with her. We talk a lot, and she lives near my house, so it's easy for me to get home.

I think a lot about the future, and I think I'd like to be a dentist (10), like my dad.

What about you? What do you look like? What are your hobbies (11)? Write and tell me about yourself!

1. أضع جهاز تقويم أسنان
2. حريص على
3. الريف
4. أنا مهتمة بالتصوير - أنا أحب التصوير
5. التقاط الصور
6. كل أنحاء العالم
7. نادي محلي
8. مرة في الشهر
9. مركز تسوّق - مركز تجاري
10. طبيب أسنان
11. هوايات



## Tip!

❑ **Remember these tips when you write your personal profile:**

- Start with a greeting: Hi/Hey
- Give your name, your age, and where you live.
- Describe what you look like.
- Tell people about your hobbies:
  I'm into ... / I'm keen on ... / My favorite hobby is ...
- Ask them to write to you:
  I can't wait to hear from you! / Write and tell me!

❑ تذكّر هذه الملاحظات عندما تكتُب ملف التعريف الشخصي الخاص بك:

- ابدأ بالتحية: Hi/Hey
- اكتب اسمك وعُمرك وأين تعيش.
- صِفْ كيف تبدو.
- أخبر الناس عن هواياتك:
  I'm into ... / I'm keen on ... / My favorite hoppy is ...
- اطلب منهم أن يردوا على رسالتك:
  I can't wait to hear from you! /Write and tell me!

## Exercises on Lesson 

### 1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

**Hana :** How can you introduce yourself, Dalia?

**Dalia :** That's easy! My name's Dalia. I'm eleven, and I live in Alexandria.

**Hana :** What do you look like?

**Dalia :** I'm quite tall, and I have long brown ❶ .................... . I wear braces.

**Hana :** What are your ❷ ......................?

**Dalia :** I'm keen on walking with my family and friends. I'm into ❸ ................ .
I like taking photos of all the beautiful things I see in the countryside.

**Hana :** Do you have other hobbies?

**Dalia :** Yes, I'm really into ❹ ................ . I play volleyball at my local club.

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

**future – mall – profile – braces – games**

This is my personal ❶ ...................... . My name's Reem. I'm twelve. I live in Giza. I'm quite tall, and I have blue eyes. I wear ❷ ...................... . I'm really into sports. I play tennis at my local club, and we have ❸ ...................... about once a month. On the weekend, I love going to the ❹ ...................... with my friends and family, and then I go to my grandma's to watch movies with her. We talk a lot, and she lives near my house, so it's easy for me to get home.

## 3 Choose the correct answer:

1. I'm (into - to - on) photography.
2. I'm really into (photography - sports - music). I play volleyball at my local club.
3. I'm (keen - worried - interested) on walking with my family and friends.
4. My (favor - flavor - favorite) hobby is drawing.
5. I can't (see - wait - feel) to hear from you!
6. Write and (talk - say - tell) me about yourself!
7. I'm into (music - photography - sports). I like taking photos of the countryside.
8. Can you write your personal (countryside - photography - profile)?

## 5 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. play - I - at - local club - volleyball - my.
   ▶ ...................................................................................... .
2. for me - easy - home - It's - to - get.
   ▶ ...................................................................................... .

3. do - What - the weekend - do - on - you?

▶ ............................................................ ?

4. think - I - about - a lot - future - the.

▶ ............................................................ .

5. to - dentist - a - be - like - I'd.

▶ ............................................................ .

6. hobbies - are - What - your?

▶ ............................................................ ?

7. can't - I - to - wait - from you - hear!

▶ ............................................................ !

8. plans - future - your - are - What?

▶ ............................................................ ?

**6** **Write a paragraph of (60) words using the following elements:**

## "My personal profile"

▶ Ideas to help you:

**name - age - live - look like - hobbies - family - friends**

............................................................

............................................................

............................................................

............................................................

............................................................

............................................................

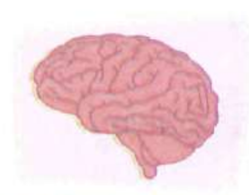
............................................................

............................................................

# Lesson 7 Story: Hana saves the day



## Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



**brain**
مخ



**cerebral palsy**
الشلل الدماغي



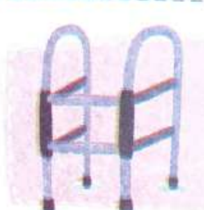
**physiotherapist**
أخصائي العلاج الطبيعي



**seat**
مَقعَد - كرسي



**crawl**
يزحف - يحبو



**walker**
مشّاية (جهاز يساعد العاجزين على المشي)

## Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **save the day** | يُنْقِذ اليوم | **suddenly** | فجأة - بشكل مفاجئ |
| **come over** | تأتي إليّ (بيتي) | **towards** | تجاه - نحو |
| **stars** | نجوم | **grass** | عُشب |
| **stickers** | ملصقات - لاصقات | **snack bar** | متجر (مطعم) وجبات خفيفة |
| **go for a walk** | يذهب للتمشية - يتمشّى | **a group of** | مجموعة من |
| **get fresh air** | تستنشق هواءً نقيًّا | **pull himself up** | يرفع (يسحب) نفسه لأعلى |
| **differently** | بشكل مختلف - بطريقة مختلفة | **quietly** | بهدوء - بشكل هادئ |

## Adjectives

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| awesome | رائع - مُدهش | thankful | شاكر - مُمتَنّ |
| special | خاص - خصوصي | relieved | مرتاح - يشعر بالراحة |
| quite scared | خائف جدًا | comfortable | مريح - مرتاح |

## Conjugation of verbs

### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| turn around | يستدير - يلتف | turned around | turned around |
| crawl | يزحف - يحبو | crawled | crawled |
| shout | يصيح | shouted | shouted |
| pull .... up | يسحب (يرفع) .... لأعلى | pulled .... up | pulled .... up |
| save | يُنقِذ | saved | saved |
| decorate | يُزَيّن | decorated | decorated |
| receive | يتسلَّم - يستلم | received | received |
| exercise | يتمرَّن - يتدرَّب | exercised | exercised |
| notice | يلاحظ | noticed | noticed |
| celebrate | يحتفل | celebrated | celebrated |

### Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past | PP |
|---|---|---|---|
| come over | تأتي إليّ (بيتي) | came over | come over |
| get taller | تزداد طولاً | got taller | got taller |
| get stronger | تزداد قوةً - تصبح أقوى | got stronger | got stronger |
| run over to | يجري بسرعة إلى | ran over to | run over to |

## Hana saves the day

Hana is a good friend who lives on my street. One day, after school, she called me.

"My new walker ❶ arrived. Do you want to come over ❷ and help me decorate ❸ it?"

Excited, I ran to her house. As she gets taller, Hana receives a new walker every year. When the new one arrives, we decorate it. Hana's favorite color is green, so we painted ❹ it green and decorated it with stars and stickers ❺. It looked awesome.

"What should we do now, Reem?" asked Hana.

"I think we should go to the park," I said.

We often go for a walk to the park after school. Hana's physiotherapist ❻, Donia, says it's important for Hana to get fresh air and exercise her legs so they get stronger.

❶ مشاية (جهاز يساعد العاجزين على المشي)
❷ تأتي إلي (بيتي)
❸ يُزيِّن
❹ لوَّن - دهن
❺ ملصقات - لاصقات
❻ أخصائي العلاج الطبيعي
❼ الشلل الدماغي
❽ مقعد - كرسي

At the park, we met our friends. They said Hana's new walker looked great. Our new friend, Rasha, asked Hana why she needed a walker.

"Well," she said, "when I was born, something happened to my brain and it works differently to some other people's. My dad calls it my special brain. The name for what I have is cerebral palsy ❼."

"Can you do everything with the walker?" asked Rasha.

"No, for eating meals I have a special chair at home, and for going out in the car, I have a special seat ❽ - it's really comfortable."

Then we walked a little more with our friends. Hana was walking behind with Nadine, our other friend. Suddenly, a woman came running towards us, and she was crying.



"I can't see my little boy!" she said. "I **turned around** (9) to get him a **snack** (10) from my bag, and now I can't see him!"

"How old is your little boy?" asked Rasha.

"Only one. He can't walk, he **crawls** (11) along the ground."

So we all looked in the grass, and the snack bar, but we didn't see him. Then, I **noticed** (12) there was a group of trees behind where the woman was sitting.

"Let's look over there!" I said. "And where's Hana?"

Nobody knew. We all ran over to the trees, **quite scared** (13) because it was near the road.

"Adam!" **shouted** (14) the woman, and she stopped crying.

There was Adam, pulling himself up on Hana's walker, and Hana was talking to him quietly. His mom was so **thankful** (15) that Hana found him. We were all so **relieved** (16) and happy, and we had an ice cream to **celebrate** (17)!

(9) إستدار - إلتف
(10) وجبة خفيفة
(11) يزحف - يحبو
(12) لاحظ
(13) خائفون جدًا
(14) صاحت
(15) شاكر - ممتن
(16) مرتاح - يشعر بالراحة
(17) يحتفل

## Exercises on Lesson 7



### 1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

**decorated – arm – exercise – brain – walker**

Hana is a good friend who lives on my street. She has cerebral palsy which means something happened to her (1) .......................... when she was born, and it works differently to some other people's. As she gets taller, Hana receives a new (2) .......................... every year. Hana's favorite color is green, so she painted her new walker green and (3) .......................... it with stars and stickers. Hana's physiotherapist says it's important for Hana to get fresh air and (4) .......................... her legs so they get stronger.

## 2 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. does - How - save - Hana - day - the?
   ▶ ............................................................ ?
2. walker - year - a new - Hana - every - receives.
   ▶ ............................................................ .
3. color - green - Hana's - is - favorite.
   ▶ ............................................................ .
4. about - is - Hana - What - special?
   ▶ ............................................................ ?
5. girl - helpful - a very - is - Hana.
   ▶ ............................................................ .
6. should - the park - go to - I - we - think.
   ▶ ............................................................ .
7. boy - old - is - How - little - your?
   ▶ ............................................................ ?
8. woman - is - worried - Why - the?
   ▶ ............................................................ ?
9. danger - in - was - boy - The little.
   ▶ ............................................................ .
10. my - boy - see - I - little - can't!
    ▶ ............................................................ !

## Unit 4 Test 4




نصا الاستماع موجودان آخر كتاب الملحق.

### 1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (4Ms)



1. Asser is in primary (three – four – five – six).
2. Seleem is short with (green – brown – blue – black) eyes.
3. Injy wears (bracelets - earrings – braces – glasses) to help her teeth get better.
4. Amal uses a wheelchair because she can't (see – smell – taste – walk) well.

### 2 Listen and answer the questions: (2Ms)



1. What is David's prosthetic arm made of?
2. What did David's dad write?

### 3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box: (4Ms)

**sports - countryside - photography - movies - hobbies**

My name is Dalia. I live in the countryside with my family. I'm into ❶ .......................... . I like taking photos of all the beautiful things in the ❷ ............................... . I'm really into ❸ ............................... . I play volleyball at my school club. I like watching ❹ ............................... with my family. I really enjoy my time with family.

### 4 Read the following text and then answer the questions below: (4Ms)

My neighbor has four children. They are all boys. They usually play football in the street and sometimes break windows. Last Saturday afternoon, I was at home having my lunch. After a while, I closed my eyes and fell asleep. Suddenly, a loud crash made me get up quickly. Then I heard a knock on the door. A boy appeared. "May I get the ball, My neighbor has got four children. They are all boys. They usually play football in the street and sometimes break windows. Last Saturday afternoon, I was at home having my lunch. After a while, I closed my eyes and fell asleep. Suddenly, a loud crash made me get up quickly. Then I heard a knock on the door. A boy appeared. "May I get the ball,

## Unit 4

**A Choose the correct answer:**

1. The boys broke (a window - glass - a vase - nothing).
2. The boys played football in the (school - club - playground - street).

**B Answer these questions:**

3. What do the four boys usually do?
4. What was the writer doing last Saturday afternoon?

### The Reader - A Wonderful Surprise

**5 A- Read and write T (True) or F (False):** (4Ms)

1. Shady's parents were digging in the park. ( )
2. There is a fountain in the sensory garden. ( )

**B Answer the following questions:**

3. What were Asser's parents doing in the park?
4. Who will be able to use the new sensory garden?

**6 Choose the correct answer:** (6Ms)

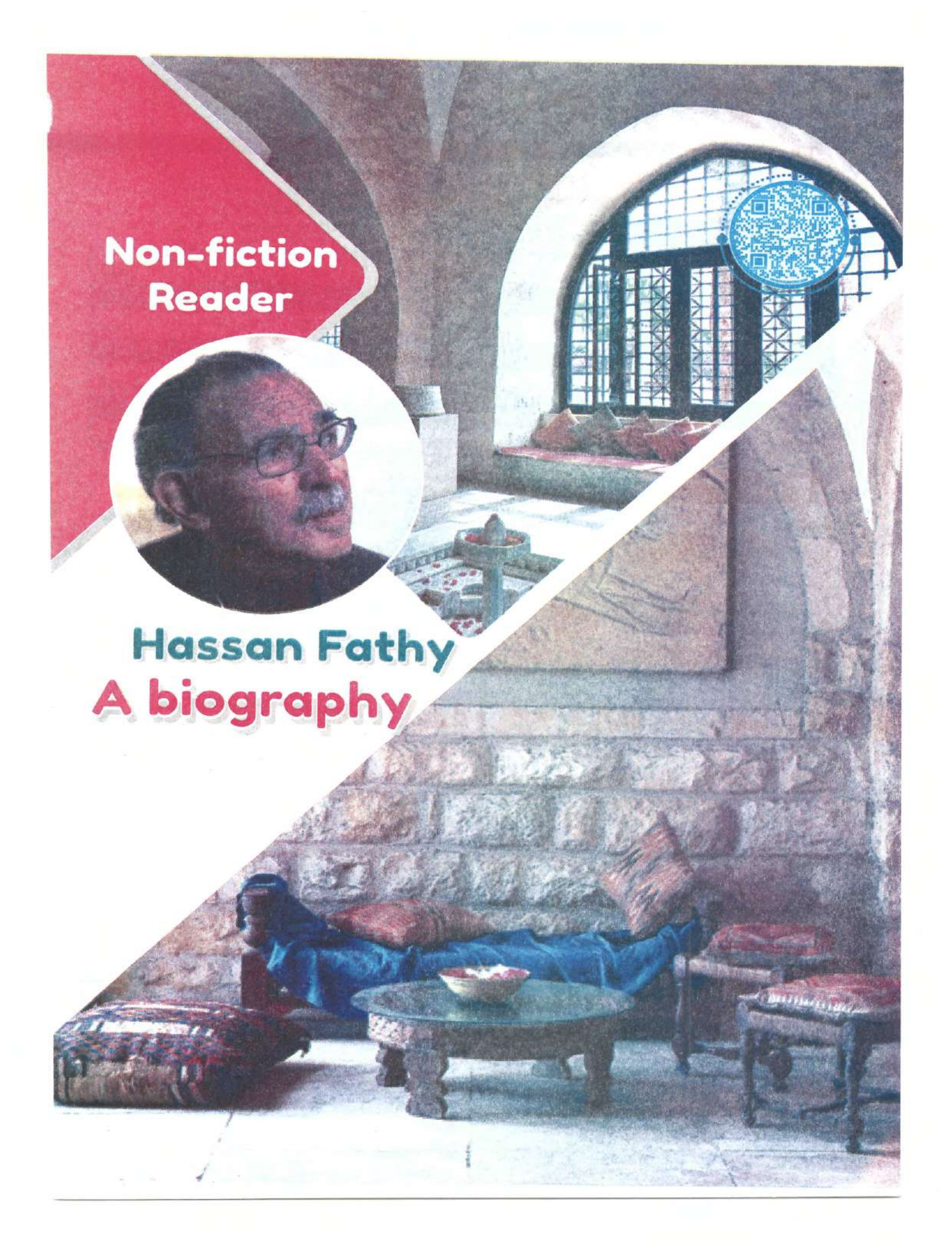
1. A (hunter - doctor - teacher - sculptor) catches or kills wild animals.
2. There is a way of communicating called (nose - ear - hand - eye) spelling.
3. The poster shows an (advertise - advertising - advertisement - advertised) for the competition.
4. January is often (colder - the coldest - cold - coldest) month of the year.
5. He has a (wheelchair - hearing aid - glasses - braces) because he has problems hearing.
6. She asked (do - did - if - what) I knew how to use sign language.

**7 Order the words to make a correct sentences:** (2Ms)

1. roared – Elephants – loudly – very – the forest – in.
2. with a – walker – What – do – can – people?

**8 Write an email to your friend Ola:** (4Ms)

Tell her about a story you read in the library last week. What happened in the story? Was it interesting or not? Your email address is mona@school.com. Your friend's email address is hana@gmail.com.


Non-fiction
Reader
Hassan Fathy
A biography

## Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية

### Paragraph (1)

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| biography | سيرة ذاتية | become | يُصبح |
| famous | مشهور | teacher | مُدرس - مُعلّم |
| Egyptian | مصري | creative | مبدع |
| architect | مهندس معماري | encourage (v) | يشجع |
| move(d) to | انتقل إلى | drawing | الرسم |
| police officer | ضابط شرطة | painting | التلوين |
| later | لاحقًا | change (v) | يُغيّر |

### Paragraph (2)

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| adult | راشد (بالغ) | materials | مواد بناء |
| studied (v) | دَرَس | the Egyptian character | الطابع المصري |
| architecture | الهندسة المعمارية | features | خصائص |
| Cairo University | جامعة القاهرة | traditional | تقليدي |
| building | بناء | domed roofs | أسطح مُقببة |
| comfortable | مُريح | mud bricks | طوب لَبِن |
| attractive | جذّاب | cool | بارد |
| houses | منازل | hot | حار |
| low-cost | قليل التكلفة | weather | طقس |

### Paragraph (3)

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| project | مشروع | public buildings | مباني عامة |
| began (v) | بدأ | Ministry of Education | وزارة التربية والتعليم |
| village | قرية | international | عالمي |
| Luxor | مدينة الأقصر | award | جائزة |
| the Valley of the Kings | وادي الملوك | at the age of | في عُمر |

### Paragraph (4)

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| important | هام | local | محلي |
| understood (v) | فَهِمَ | climate | المناخ |
| respect (v) | يحترم | walls | حوائط |

# Hassan Fathy: A biography

## Paragraph (1)


The famous workplace

Hassan Fathy was a famous Egyptian architect ❶. He was born in Alexandria in 1900. When he was eight, Hassan and his family moved to ❷ Cairo. His father was a police officer, but later changed jobs ❸ to become a teacher. As a child ❹, Hassan was creative ❺, and his family encouraged him ❻ to do different things. He loved drawing and painting, and he was very good at math.

❶ مهندس معماري ❷ انتقل إلى ❸ غيّر وظيفته ❹ كطفل ❺ مُبدع ❻ شجّعته

## Paragraph (2)

When he was an adult ❶, Hassan studied architecture ❷ at Cairo University, and he taught the subject in Cairo in the 1920s ❸ and 1930s ❹. Later, he worked as an architect. As he got older, Fathy became famous for building comfortable, attractive ❺ houses using low-cost ❻ materials ❼. He wanted his houses to have Egyptian character ❽. His new buildings had features ❾ from traditional ❿ Egyptian homes, for example, domed roofs ⓫ and mud bricks ⓬. They kept the houses cool in the hot weather.

A domed roof at New Gourna

❶ راشد (بالغ) ❷ الهندسة المعمارية ❸ في فترة العشرينات ❹ في فترة الثلاثينات ❺ جذّاب
❻ قليل التكلفة ❼ مواد بناء ❽ الطابع المصري ❾ خصائص ❿ تقليدي ⓫ أسطح مقببة ⓬ طوب لبِن

## Paragraph (3)

Fathy's first big project began in the 1940s ❶. It was New Gourna, which is a very interesting village. The village is near Luxor. The people there needed to move because their homes were too close to ❷ the Valley of the Kings ❸. Fathy built new homes for the people in the traditional style ❹, at low cost. In the 1950s ❺, Fathy built other public buildings, for example, schools, for Egypt's Ministry of Education ❻. You can find his buildings all over Egypt and around the world, for example, in New Mexico in the USA. Fathy received the Aga Khan Chairman's Award for Architecture and an international award for his designs, both in 1980. He lived in Cairo until 1989, when he died at the age of 89.

❶ في فترة الأربعينات ❷ قريبة من ❸ وادي الملوك
❹ نمط تقليدي ❺ في فترة الخمسينات ❻ وزارة التربية و التعليم المصرية





## Paragraph (4)

Today, we can see that Hassan Fathy's work is important for three reasons ❶. Firstly, he understood that traditional architecture was great for his country. Secondly, he respected ❷ the people who lived in his buildings. The houses he built are very comfortable, and they work well for the people who live in them. Thirdly, he knew it is important to build for the local climate ❸. His houses have high domed roofs ❹ and thick mud walls ❺ to keep them cool. ❶ أسباب ❷ احترم ❸ المناخ المحلي ❹ أسطح مُقبية عالية ❺ حوائط طينية سميكة

## Questions with their model answers

### 1 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. Hassan Fathy was a famous Egyptian teacher. (.......)
2. Hassan Fathy was born in Alexandria. (.......)
3. Hassan Fathy's father was an architect. (.......)
4. Hassan Fathy loved drawing and painting. (.......)
5. Hassan Fathy was very bad at math. (.......)
6. Hassan studied architecture at Cairo University. (.......)
7. Hassan worked as an architect. (.......)
8. Hassan built attractive houses using high-cost materials. (.......)
9. Hassan wanted his houses to have Egyptian character. (.......)
10. Hassan's buildings had features from modern Egyptian homes. (.......)
11. Traditional Egyptian homes had domed roofs and mud bricks. (.......)
12. Mud bricks kept the houses cool in the hot weather. (.......)
13. Fathy's first big project began in the 1930s. (.......)
14. New Gourna is a very interesting city. (.......)
15. New Gourna is a village near Luxor. (.......)
16. The houses in New Gourna were too far from the Valley of the Kings. (.......)
17. Fathy built new homes in the traditional style for people at New Gourna. (.......)
18. Fathy didn't build any public buildings. (.......)
19. You can find Fathy's buildings all over Egypt only. (.......)
20. Fathy received the Aga Khan Chairman's Award for Architecture. (.......)

21. Hassan Fathy lived in Cairo until 1989. (.......)
22. Hassan Fathy died at the age of 90. (.......)
23. Traditional architecture was great for Hassan's country. (.......)
24. Fathy built uncomfortable houses for the people at New Gourna. (.......)
25. Hassan knew that it is important to build for the local climate. (.......)
26. Thick mud walls keep the houses cool. (.......)

## 2 Complete the following sentences:

1. Hassan Fathy was a famous Egyptian ................................ .
2. Hassan Fathy was born in ................................ .
3. Hassan and his family moved to Cairo when he was ................................ .
4. Hassan's father changed jobs to become a ................................ .
5. Hassan loved ................................ and painting.
6. Hassan was very good at ................................ .
7. Hassan studied ................................ at Cairo University.
8. Fathy became famous for building ................................ houses.
9. Fathy used ................................ materials for building houses.
10. Hassan's new buildings had ................................ from traditional Egyptian homes.
11. ................................ is something which has a round shape. SB
12. ................................ is a type of building material made of earth. SB
13. We need to keep our houses ................................ in the hot weather.
14. New Gourna is a very interesting ................................ .
15. New Gourna is a village near ................................ .
16. Homes in New Gourna were too close to ................................ .
17. Fathy built new homes in the ................................ style.
18. Fathy's first big ................................ began in the 1940s.
19. Schools are ................................ buildings.
20. You can find Fathy's buildings all over Egypt and around the ................. .
21. Fathy received an international award for his ................................ .
22. Fathy died at the ................................ of 89.
23. Domed roofs and thick ................................ walls keep the houses cool.

## 3 Answer the following questions:

1. What was Hassan Fathy's job?

▶ ................................................................ .

2. Where was Hassan Fathy born?

▶ ................................................................ .

3. Which two cities did Hassan Fathy live in as a child? SB

▶ ................................................................ .

4. What was Hassan Fathy's favorite subject?

▶ ................................................................ .

5. What did Hassan Fathy love when he was a child?

▶ ................................................................ .

6. Where did Hassan study architecture?

▶ ................................................................ .

7. What are the special features of Hassan Fahty's buildings? SB

▶ ................................................................ .

8. What do you know about New Gourna?

▶ ................................................................ .

9. What did Hassan Fathy build for Egypt's Ministry of Education?

▶ ................................................................ .

10. Which countries can you see Hassan Fathy's buildings in? SB

▶ ................................................................ .

11. What awards did Hassan Fathy receive?

▶ ................................................................ .

12. When did Hassan Fathy receive awards?

▶ ................................................................ .

13. Why is Hassan Fathy an important person? SB

▶ ................................................................ .

14. What is interesting about Hassan Fathy's buildings? SB

▶ ................................................................ .

15. Are Hassan Fathy's buildings similar to buildings in your city/village? SB

▶ ................................................................ .

## Answers

### 1 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

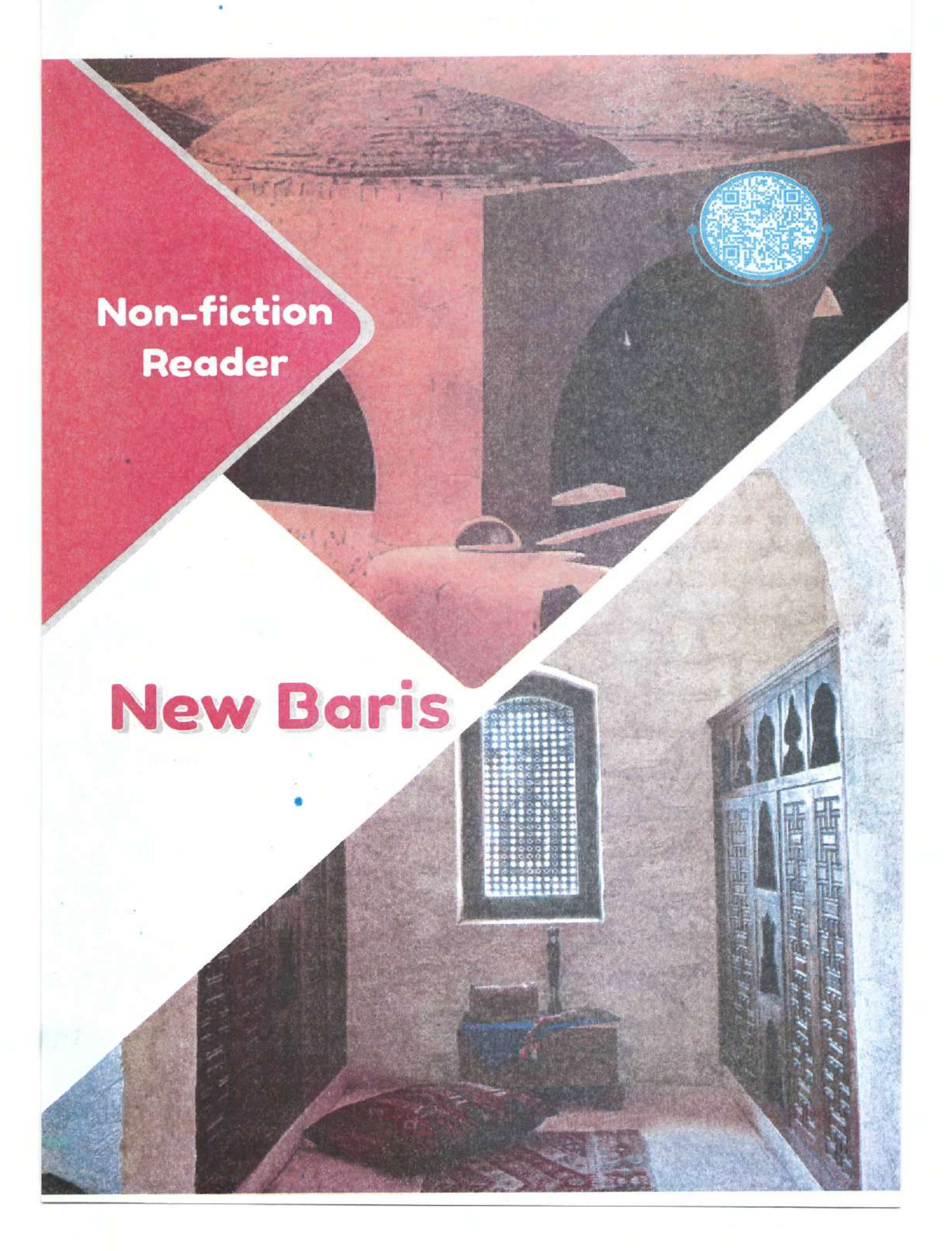
| | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1- F | 2- T | 3- F | 4- T | 5- F | 6- T | 7- T | 8- F | 9- T |
| 10- F | 11- T | 12- T | 13- F | 14- F | 15- T | 16- F | 17- T | 18- F |
| 19- F | 20- T | 21- T | 22- F | 23- T | 24- F | 25- T | 26- T | |

### 2 Complete the following sentences:

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1- architect | 2- Alexandria | 3- eight | 4- teacher | 5- drawing |
| 6- math | 7- architecture | 8- attractive | 9- low-cost | 10- features |
| 11- Domed | 12- Mud brick | 13- cool | 14- village | 15- Luxor |
| 16- the Valley of the Kings | 17- traditional | 18- project | 19- public | 20- world |
| 21- designs | 22- age | 23- mud | | |

### 3 Answer the following questions:

1. He was an architect.
2. He was born in Alexandria.
3. He lived in Alexandria and Cairo.
4. He was very good at math.
5. He loved drawing and painting.
6. He studied architecture at Cairo University.
7. They are comfortable, attractive houses with domed roofs and mud bricks.
8. It's a village near Luxor. Fathy built new homes for the people there.
9. He built public buildings like schools.
10. Luxor, Cairo and New Mexico in the USA.
11. He received the Aga Khan Chairman's Award for Architecture and an international award for his designs.
12. Hassan Fathy received awards in 1980.
13. He understood that traditional architecture was great for his country. He made comfortable houses for the people to live in. He built houses for the local climate.
14. His houses have high domed roofs and thick mud walls to be cool in the hot weather.
15. Yes, they are.


Non-fiction
Reader
New Baris

## Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية

### Paragraph (1)

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| planning (n) | تخطيط | temperature | درجة الحرارة |
| organization | منظمة | rose (v) | ارتفع |
| design (v) | يصمم | degrees | درجات (وحدة قياس الحرارة) |
| desert | صحراء | crops | محاصيل |
| challenges | تحديات | families | عائلات |

### Paragraph (2)

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| builders | بنّائين | shade | ظِل |
| well | بئر | courtyard | فِناء |
| start | يبدأ | seating | الجلوس |
| windcatchers | مصدات الرياح | outside | بالخارج |
| hold | يمسك | create | يخلق |
| area | منطقة | communities | مجتمعات |

### Paragraph (3)

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| unfinished | غير منتهية | villa | فيلا |
| town hall | دار البلدية | respect | يحترم |
| museum | متحف | in the middle of | في منتصف |
| social center | المركز الاجتماعي | fantastic | رائع |

## New Baris

### Planning a new village

In the 1960s, an organization ❶ (called the ODD) asked Hassan Fathy to design ❷ a village in the desert ❸ at Kharga for the farmers. There were two challenges ❹. Firstly, it was important to keep the village cool for the people there. Sometimes, the temperature ❺ rose to ❻ 50 degrees ❼ in the desert at Kharga. Secondly, the farmers needed water for their crops ❽ and families. They needed to find water before building the new houses.

❶ منظمة ❷ يصمم ❸ صحراء ❹ تحديات ❺ درجة الحرارة ❻ ارتفع إلى ❼ درجات ❽ محاصيل

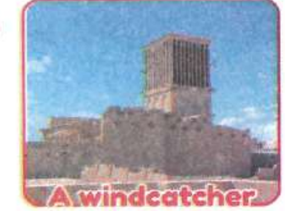




## Building in the desert


A well at New Baris

The ODD had a team of builders ❶. Luckily, the builders found a well ❷ and they were very happy. Hassan Fathy could start ❸ building. He began work in 1963. To keep the village houses cool, they were made of mud bricks. The village also had windcatchers ❹ – they are tall buildings which hold ❺ hot air and cool it down.


A windcatcher

Fathy carefully studied the position of the sun and designed the area ❻ so that the buildings gave shade ❼ to people in the streets. He started with his domed roofs for the houses. Then, he added a taktabosh courtyard ❽, which provided a shaded seating ❾ area outside ❿. Hassan Fathy added the suk and other buildings for the people. He believed it was important to create ⓫ communities ⓬, not just houses.

❶ بنائين ❷ بئر ❸ يبدأ ❹ مصدات الرياح ❺ يمسك
❻ منطقة ❼ ظل ❽ فناء ❾ جلوس ❿ بالخارج ⓫ يخلق ⓬ مجتمعات

## New Baris now


A courtyard at New Baris

Sadly, New Baris is unfinished ❶. Work on it stopped in 1967, but today you can still see the suk, the main town hall ❷, the beginning of the museum ❸ and social center ❹, and some villas ❺. You can see and respect ❻ Hassan Fathy's designs. Hassan Fathy wanted to create a community of farmers in the middle of ❼ the desert. He wanted to give the farmers a fantastic ❽ place to live.

❶ غير منتهية ❷ دار البلدية
❸ متحف ❹ المركز الاجتماعي
❺ فيلات ❻ يحترم ❼ في منتصف ❽ رائع

## Questions with their model answers

### 1 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. Hassan Fathy needed to build a village in the courtyard. (.......)

2. The builders found a well in the desert. (.......)
3. The village houses were made of mud bricks. (.......)
4. A courtyard is a tall building which hold hot air and cool it down. (.......)
5. Hassan Fathy used mud bricks and windcatchers to make the houses cool. (.......)
6. Hassan Fathy researched how to give the streets water. (.......)
7. Hassan Fathy designed a whole community, not just houses. (.......)
8. Hassan Fathy designed buildings that gave shade to people in the streets. (.......)
9. The work on New Baris stopped in 1970. (.......)
10. Today you can still see the main town hall of New Baris. (.......)
11. There aren't any villas in New Baris now. (.......)
12. You can still see the suk and the beginning of the museum in New Baris today. (.......)
13. We should respect Hassan Fathy's designs. (.......)
14. Hassan Fathy wanted to create a community of teachers in the middle of the desert. (.......)
15. Hassan Fathy wanted to give the farmers a fantastic place to live. (.......)

## 2 Complete the following sentences:

1. Hassan Fathy designed a ........................... in the desert at Kharga.
2. It was important to keep the village ......................... for the people there.
3. Sometimes, the temperature rose to 50 .................................. in the desert of Kharga.
4. The farmers at Kharga needed water for their ..................... and families.
5. The houses of the village were made of ........................... .
6. The builders found a ................ in the desert and they were very happy.
7. There wasn't enough ........................... for the people at Kharga. SB
8. Hassan Fathy used mud bricks and ........................... to make the houses cool. SB
9. Hassan Fathy carefully studied the position of the ........................... during the building process.

10. Fathy researched how to give the streets ........................ . [SB]
11. Fathy designed a whole community, not just ........................ . [SB]
12. The work on New Baris ........................ in 1967.
13. You can still see the beginning of the ........................ in New Baris.
14. We should respect Hassan Fathy's ........................ .
15. Hassan Fathy wanted to create a community of farmers in the middle of the ........................ .
16. Hassan Fathy wanted to give the farmers a .................... place to live.

## 3 Answer the following questions:

1. Why was it difficult to build in the desert? [SB]
   ▶ ........................................................................................ .
2. Where did Hassan Fathy design a village?
   ▶ ........................................................................................ .
3. What challenges did Hassan Fathy face during building in the desert?
   ▶ ........................................................................................ .
4. What was the weather like in the desert at Kharga during the building process?
   ▶ ........................................................................................ .
5. What did the farmers need to find in the desert at Kharga?
   ▶ ........................................................................................ .
6. Why did the farmers look for water?
   ▶ ........................................................................................ .
7. What did the builders find in the desert?
   ▶ ........................................................................................ .
8. How did the builders feel when they found water in the desert?
   ▶ ........................................................................................ .
9. When did Hassan Fathy begin work in New Baris?

▶ .................................................................................................................. .

**10.** What did Hassan Fathy do to keep the village houses cool?

▶ .................................................................................................................. .

**11.** What do you know about windcatchers?

▶ .................................................................................................................. .

**12.** Why did Hassan Fathy study the position of the sun?

▶ .................................................................................................................. .

**13.** What did Hassan Fathy want to create at Kharga?

▶ .................................................................................................................. .

**14.** Why did Hassan Fathy build a courtyard?

▶ .................................................................................................................. .

**15.** When did the work on New Baris stop?

▶ .................................................................................................................. .

**16.** What can you still see in New Baris today?

▶ .................................................................................................................. .

**17.** Where did Hassan Fathy create the community of farmers?

▶ .................................................................................................................. .

**18.** Why did Hassan Fathy create that community of farmers at Kharga?

▶ .................................................................................................................. .

## Answers

### 1 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

| | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1- F | 2- T | 3- T | 4- F | 5- T | 6- F | 7- T | 8- T | 9- F |
| 10- T | 11- F | 12- T | 13- T | 14- F | 15- T | | | |

### 2 Complete the following sentences:

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1- village | 2- cool | 3- degrees | 4- crops | 5- mud bricks |
| 6- well | 7- water | 8- windcatchers | 9- sun | 10- shade |
| 11- houses | 12- stopped | 13- museum | 14- designs | 15- desert |
| 16- fantastic | | | | |





## 3 Answer the following questions:

1. Because of the high temperature and the lack of water.
2. He designed a village in the desert at Kharga.
3. He needed to keep the village cool and find water for farmers' families and crops.
4. Sometimes, the temperature rose to 50 degrees.
5. They needed to find water.
6. Because they needed it for their crops and families.
7. They found a well.
8. They were very happy.
9. Hassan Fathy began work in New Baris in 1963.
10. He used mud bricks for building the houses and he also used windcatchers to cool down the hot air.
11. They are tall buildings which hold hot air and cool it down.
12. To give people shade in the streets.
13. He wanted to create communities, not just houses.
14. To provide a shaded setting area outside.
15. It stopped in 1967.
16. I can see the suk, the main town hall, the beginning of the museum, the social center and some villas.
17. In the middle of the desert.
18. Because he wanted to give the farmers a fantastic place to live in.


The Fiction Reader
A wonderful surprise



## Characters الشخصيات



**Mom**

She drives her children, Mayar and Asser to school every day. She also helps the children's dad to make the sensory garden.

تقوم الأم بتوصيل أبنائها (ميار وآسر) إلى المدرسة كل يوم كما تساعد والد أبنائها في صناعة الحديقة الحسية.



**Dad**

He loves reading books with his daughter Mayar in braille. He also helps the builders in digging the sensory garden to make the children happy.

يحب الأب قراءة الكتب مع ابنته ميار بطريقة برايل للمكفوفين وهو أيضًا يساعد البنائين في حفر الحديقة الحسية لجعل الأطفال سعداء.



**Grandma**

She takes Asser and Mayar to her house after school every day. She also makes cookies for them.

تقوم الجدة بأخذ آسر وميار إلى منزلها بعد المدرسة كل يوم كما تقوم بإعداد البسكويت لهم.



**Asser**

He is Mayar's brother. He loves playing the guitar and singing. He likes playing football with his friend, Shady. He helps his parents in planting the flowers in the sensory garden.

هو أخ ميار ويحب عزف الجيتار والغناء كما يحب لعب كرة القدم مع صديقه شادي. ويساعد والديه في زراعة الزهور في الحديقة الحسية.



**Mayar**

She is Asser's sister. She reads books in braille. She likes listening to audiobooks. She enjoys the fountain in the sensory garden very much.

هي أخت آسر وتحب قراءة الكتب بطريقة برايل كما تحب أيضًا الاستماع إلى الكتب المسموعة وتستمتع جدًا بالنافورة في الحديقة الحسية.



**Shady**

He is Asser's friend. He plays football with Asser in the park. He knew the voice of Asser's parents and discovered the secret of the sensory garden with Asser.

هو صديق آسر الذي يلعب معه كرة القدم في الحديقة. لقد تعرف على صوت والدي آسر واكتشف سر الحديقة الحسية مع آسر.



**Mrs Azza**

She is Mayar's teacher. She gave her a book in braille to read by herself.

هي معلمة ميار التي أعطتها كتاب بطريقة برايل لتقرأه بنفسها.



**Mrs Eman**

She is Asser's teacher. She takes the children outside to the school gates.

هي معلمة آسر التي تأخذ الأطفال للخارج عند بوابات المدرسة.



## Picture Dictionary القاموس المصور



audiobook
كتاب مسموع



braille
طريقة برايل للمكفوفين



bush
شجيرة



garage
جراج



hug
احتضان





muddy
مغطى بالوحل



secret
سر





shovel
جاروف



trunk
حقيبة السيارة



wind chimes
أجراس الرياح



## Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| neatly | بنظام | dig | يحفر |
| outside | بالخارج | surprised | مندهش |
| gates | بوابات | spade | جاروف |
| wave | يلوح | information board | لوحة المعلومات |
| pick up | يأخذ/يوصل | sensory garden | حديقة حسية |
| strange | غريب | neighborhood | حي |
| boots | حذاء طويل | fountain | نافورة |
| pottery class | حصة صناعة الخزف | wide paths | ممرات واسعة |
| apron | مريلة | wheelchairs | كراسي متحركة |
| concert | حفلة موسيقية | awesome | رائع |
| remember | يتذكر | surprise(n) | مفاجأة |
| practice(v) | يتدرَّب | forget | ينسى |

## Part (1)

It was the end of the school day, and Asser put his pens and pencils away neatly ❶. He looked out of the classroom window for his mom, but he couldn't see her.

Mrs Eman, his teacher, took the children outside ❷. Then Asser saw his grandma waiting at ❸ the school gates ❹. He smiled and waved ❺ at her.

❶ بنظام ❷ الخارج ❸ تنتظر عند ❹ بوابات
❺ لوّح



Asser loved it when his grandma **picked him up** ❶, and he **hugged** ❷ her. "What a nice **surprise** ❸! I didn't know you were coming today," he said.

"Your mom is **busy** ❹, so I'm here today," she smiled. "Now, where's your sister?"

They saw Mayar **come out of** ❺ her classroom. She was with her friends, and she was carrying a book. She **looked** ❻ very happy.

Mayar's teacher, Mrs Azza, came to **talk to** ❼ Grandma. ❶ تأخذه ❷ احتضنها ❸ مفاجأة






Mrs Azza said, "Mayar has a new book. It has words that you can read to her. It also has words in **braille** ❶ that she can read **herself** ❷."

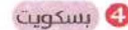
"Thank you!" said Grandma. "We can read this **together** ❸ this evening."

"Are we going to your house today, Grandma?" asked Mayar.

"Yes, we are. Your mom and dad are busy. Should we make **cookies** ❹?"

"Yes, please!" said Asser and Mayar.

❶ طريقة برايل للمكفوفين ❷ بنفسها ❸ سويًا







## Questions with their model answers

### 1 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. Mrs Eman is Asser's teacher. (..............)
2. Asser saw his mom at the school gates. (..............)
3. Mrs Azza gave Asser a braille book. SB (..............)

Term 1

4. The children's Grandma took them to her house after school. (............)
5. Mayar has a new book with words in braille. (............)
6. Grandma and the children made a cake together. SB (............)

## 2 Complete the following sentences:

1. Asser looked for his ................ at school.
2. Mrs Eman is Asser's ................ .
3. ................ was waiting for the children at the school gates.
4. When Asser saw Mayar, she was carrying a ................ .
5. Mrs Azza gave Mayar a book which has words in ................ .
6. Asser and Mayar made ................ with their Grandma.

## 3 Answer the following questions:

1. Who is Mrs Eman?
2. Who came to take Asser and Mayar home?
3. Where was the children's Grandma waiting for them?
4. What did Asser do when he saw his Grandma?
5. What was Mayar carrying when she came out of her classroom?
6. Who came to talk to the children's Grandma?
7. Why could Mayar read the book by herself?
8. What did the children make with their Grandma?

## Answers

### 1 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

| 1- T | 2- F | 3- F | 4- T | 5- T | 6- F |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|

### 2 Complete the following sentences:

| 1- mom | 2- teacher | 3- Grandma | 4- book | 5- braille | 6- cookies |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|

### 3 Answer the following questions:

1. She's Asser's teacher.
2. Their Grandma.
3. At the school gates.
4. He smiled and waved at her.
5. She was carrying a book.
6. Mayar's teacher, Mrs Azza.
7. Because it was written in braille.
8. They made cookies.





## Part (2)

The children stayed at Grandma's house until the evening. Their **parents** ❶ arrived after dinner.

"Thanks for having the children, Mom," said their mom.

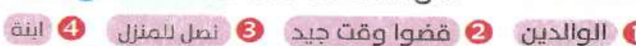
"You're welcome, Salma! I love having them here!" replied Grandma.

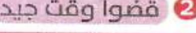
"Did you **have a good time** ❷ with Grandma today?" asked their mom.

'Yes, of course! And look at my new book from school!" said Mayar.

"It's great. Let's read it when we **get home** ❸," said their dad.

Their mom and dad were happy to see Mayar's new book. When Mayar was a baby, her mom and dad learned braille. They helped her to read. Now, they love reading with their **daughter** ❹ in the evenings.






❶ الوالدين ❷ قضوا وقت جيد ❸ نصل للمنزل ❹ ابنة

The family all got in the car to go home. As Asser went to put the school bags in the open **trunk** ❶, he noticed something strange. He saw his mom and dad's **boots** ❷ there, and they were **muddy** ❸.

"Their boots are really muddy. Have Mom and Dad been to a farm?" thought Asser.

Asser then got into the car, and they all went home.

❶ حقيبة السيارة ❷ حذاء طويل ❸ مغطى بالوحل





The next morning, at breakfast, the children's mom said, "Grandma will pick you up from school again today."

"Are you going to be home late, Mom?" asked Asser.

"Yes, I'm very busy this week. I'll pick you up from Grandma's at seven o'clock."

"OK," said Asser.

"It's music club ❶ today, so don't forget your guitar, Asser. Mayar, you have pottery classes ❷ at lunchtime, so remember your apron ❸."

❶ نادٍ موسيقي ❷ حصص صناعة الخزف ❸ مريلة



"Can we listen to an audiobook ❶, Mom?" asked Mayar.

"Yes, of course," her mom said.

While Mayar and her mom chose ❷ an audiobook, Asser looked out of the window. He was thinking about his school concert ❸ next week. He hoped his parents remembered it. He really wanted them to come and watch him. Asser wanted to ask his mom about the concert, but she looked tired. He decided to ask her later ❹.

❶ كتاب مسموع ❷ اختارت ❸ حفلة موسيقية مدرسية ❹ لاحقًا



## Questions with their model answers

### 1 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. The children stayed at Grandma's house until the evening. (............)
2. The children's parents arrived at Grandma's house after lunch. (............)
3. Asser and Mayar had a good time with their Grandma. (............)

4. Mayar's parents didn't learn to read in braille. (............)
5. Asser's family took the train to go home. (............)
6. Mayar put the school bags in the trunk. (............)
7. The boots in the trunk were muddy. (............)
8. Asser's parents went to the farm. (............)
9. The children's parents were very busy. (............)
10. Asser liked to play the guitar. (............)
11. Mom had pottery classes at lunchtime. (............)
12. Mayar listened to the radio in the car. (............)
13. Asser was thinking about his school concert. (............)

## 2 Complete the following sentences:

1. The children stayed at Grandma's house until the ................. .
2. The children's parents arrived after ................. to Grandma's house.
3. When Mayar was a baby, her parents learned ................. .
4. Mayar's parents love ................. with her in the evenings.
5. The family got in the ................. to go home.
6. Asser put the school bags in the open ................. .
7. Asser noticed that his mom and dad's boots were ................. .
8. Asser took his ................. because he had a music club.
9. Mayar needed to take her ................. at the pottery classes.
10. Mayar listened to an ................. in the car.
11. Asser was thinking about his school ................. next week.

## 3 Answer the following questions:

1. Where did the children stay after school?
▶ ................................................................................ .
2. When did the children's parents arrive to Grandma's house?
▶ ................................................................................ .
3. Did the children have a good time with their Grandma?
▶ ................................................................................ .
4. How did mom and dad feel when they saw Mayar's book?
▶ ................................................................................ .

**5.** What did Mayar's parents learn when she was a baby?

▶ ..........................................................................................

**6.** How did the family go home?

▶ ..........................................................................................

**7.** Where did Asser put the school bags?

▶ ..........................................................................................

**8.** What did Asser see in the trunk?

▶ ..........................................................................................

**9.** How did the boots look like?

▶ ..........................................................................................

**10.** What did Asser take to the music club?

▶ ..........................................................................................

**11.** What did Mayar take to her pottery classes?

▶ ..........................................................................................

**12.** What did Mayar listen to in the car?

▶ ..........................................................................................

**13.** What was Asser thinking about in the car?

▶ ..........................................................................................

## Answers

### 1 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

| | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1- T | 2- F | 3- T | 4- F | 5- F | 6- F | 7- T | 8- F | 9- T |
| 10- T | 11- F | 12- F | 13- T | | | | | |

### 2 Complete the following sentences:

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1- evening | 2- dinner | 3- braille | 4- reading | 5- car | 6- trunk |
| 7- muddy | 8- guitar | 9- apron | 10- audiobook | 11- concert | |

### 3 Answer the following questions:

**1.** At Grandma's house.

**2.** After dinner.

**3.** Yes, they did.

**4.** They were very happy.

**5.** They learned reading in braille.

**6.** By car.

**7.** In the open trunk.

**8.** He saw his mom and dad's boots.

**9.** They were muddy.

**10.** He took his guitar.

**11.** She took her apron.

**12.** She listened to an audiobook.

**13.** He was thinking about his school concert.



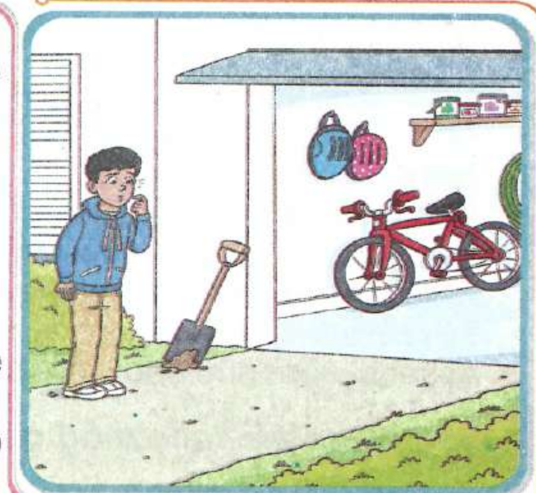


## Part (3)

On the weekend ❶, the parents were busy again. Salma planned to ❷ take the children to Grandma's. It was a beautiful ❸ day, so Asser decided to ❹ take his football.

He went to the garage ❺ to get this football. Outside the garage, he saw his dad's shovel ❻. It was covered in mud ❼. Asser looked around ❽ the yard ❾. There was nothing different there, no new trees or plants ❿. Why was the shovel so muddy?

"That's strange ⓫," thought Asser.



❶ في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع ❷ خططت لـ ❸ جميل ❹ قرر أن ❺ جراج ❻ جاروف ❼ مغطى بالوحل ❽ نظر حول ❾ فناء ❿ نباتات ⓫ غريب

Asser and Mayar went to their grandma's house every day that week. Asser was worried about ❶ the concert. He really wanted his mom and dad to go to the concert. He wanted them to hear him sing ❷ and play his guitar ❸. Did they remember ❹ about it? They were so busy. He practiced ❺ his song a lot because he wanted the concert to go well ❻.

❶ قلق لأجل ❷ يغني ❸ يعزف على جيتاره ❹ تذكروا ❺ تدرّب ❻ تسير على ما يرام



## Questions with their model answers

### 1 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. Asser went to the park to get his football. (............)
2. Asser saw his dad's shovel inside the garage. (............)
3. Dad's shovel was covered in mud. (............)

4. Asser found new trees around the yard. (............)
5. Mayar was worried about the concert. (............)

## 2 Complete the following sentences:

1. Asser decided to play .................. on the weekend.
2. Asser went to the .................. to get his football.
3. Asser saw his dad's .................. outside the garage.
4. Dad's shovel was covered in .................. .
5. Asser didn't find any new trees around the .................. .
6. Asser was worried about the .................. .
7. Asser wanted his parents to hear him play his .................. .
8. Asser's mom and dad were so .................. .

## 3 Answer the following questions:

1. What did the children's mom plan to do on the weekend?
2. What did Asser decided to do on the weekend?
3. Where did Asser go to get his football?
4. What did Asser see outside the garage?
5. What was the shovel look like?
6. What did Asser do when he saw the shovel covered in mud?
7. What did Asser want?
8. Why did Asser want his parents to come to the concert?
9. What did Asser do before the concert?

### Answers

**1 Read and write T (True) or F (False):**

| 1- F | 2- F | 3- T | 4- F | 5- F |
|---|---|---|---|---|

**2 Complete the following sentences:**

| 1- football | 2- garage | 3- shovel | 4- mud |
|---|---|---|---|
| 5- yard | 6- concert | 7- guitar | 8- yard |

**3 Answer the following questions:**

1. She planned to take the children to Grandma's house.
2. He decided to play football.
3. He went to the garage.
4. He saw his dad's shovel.
5. It was so muddy.
6. He looked around the yard to see if there were any new trees or plants.
7. He wanted his mom and dad to go to the concert.
8. To hear him sing and play the guitar.
9. He practiced his song a lot.

## Part (4)

Later on ❶, Asser was playing in Grandma's yard while Mayar listened to ❷ an audiobook. Asser's friend, Shady, came by.

"Hi, Asser. I didn't know you lived here," said Shady.

"It's my grandma's house," said Asser.

"Do you want to come to the park ❸ with me and my dad?" asked Shady.

'Yes, but I'll have to ask ❹ Grandma," said Asser.



Asser went inside ❺. "Grandma, can I go to the park with Shady and his dad, please ❻?" he said.

"Yes, of course ❼. Take your water bottle ❽!" replied Grandma.

❶ في وقت لاحق ❷ استمعت إلى ❸ حديقة ❹ اسأل ❺ الداخل ❻ أرجوك ❼ نعم، بالطبع ❽ زجاجة

Asser and Shady had fun ❶ in the park. When they got tired ❷, they sat down ❸ by some thick bushes ❹. They drank ❺ some water and ate ❻ some fruit ❼. They were sitting quietly ❽ when they heard people talking.

"That sounds like ❾ your mom and dad," said Shady.

Asser looked around. Shady was right ❿. It sounded like they were near ⓫ – but where?



❶ استمتعوا بوقتهم ❷ تعبوا ❸ جلسوا ❹ شجيرات كثيفة ❺ شربوا ❻ أكلوا ❼ فاكهة ❽ بهدوء
❾ يبدو أنه ❿ على حق ⓫ قريبين





## Questions with their model answers

### 1 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

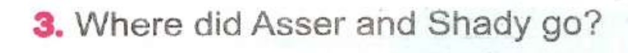
1. Asser was playing football at school. (............)
2. Grandma listened to an audiobook. (............)
3. Shady and his dad were going to the park. (............)
4. Shady saw Asser playing in Grandma's yard. (............)
5. Asser asked his mom to go to the park with Shady. (............)
6. Asser and Shady had fun in the park. (............)
7. Asser and Shady sat down by some tall trees in the park. SB (............)
8. There were some thick bushes in the park. (............)
9. Mayar and Asser ate some fruit in the park. (............)
10. Asser and Shady heard Shady's parents talking in the park. SB (........)

### 2 Complete the following sentences:

1. Asser was playing football in Grandma's .................. .
2. Shady is Asser's .................. .
3. Shady was walking with his .................. when he saw Asser.
4. Shady and his dad were going to the .................. .
5. Asser and Shady sat down by some thick .................. .
6. Shady and Asser drank some .................. in the park.
7. Asser and Shady .................. some fruit.
8. Shady heard the voice of Asser's .................. .

### 3 Answer the following questions:

1. What did Asser do in Grandma's yard?
   ▶ ............................................................................................................ .
2. What did Mayar do in Grandma's yard?
   ▶ ............................................................................................................ .





**3.** Where did Asser and Shady go?

▶ .................................................................................................................................... .

**4.** What did Asser's Grandma ask him to take?

▶ .................................................................................................................................... .

**5.** Where did Asser and Shady sit down in the park?

▶ .................................................................................................................................... .

**6.** What did Asser and Shady do in the park?

▶ .................................................................................................................................... .

**7.** What did Asser and Shady hear in the park?

▶ .................................................................................................................................... .

**8.** How did Asser find out his parents' secret? 

▶ .................................................................................................................................... .

## Answers

### 1 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1- F | 2- F | 3- T | 4- T | 5- F |
| 6- T | 7- F | 8- T | 9- F | 10- F |

### 2 Complete the following sentences:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1- yard | 2- friend | 3- dad | 4- park |
| 5- bushes | 6- water | 7- ate | 8- parents |

### 3 Answer the following questions:

**1.** He played football.

**2.** She listened to an audiobook.

**3.** They went to the park.

**4.** She asked him to take his water bottle.

**5.** They sat down by some thick bushes.

**6.** They played football, drank some water and ate some fruit.

**7.** They heard Asser's mom and dad talking.

**8.** He heard them talking on the other side of the park.

## Part (5)

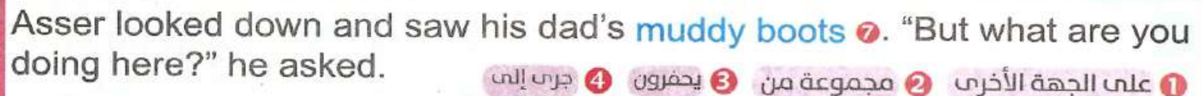
Asser and Shady walked around the bushes. **On the other side** ❶, there was **a group of** ❷ people working. Asser's parents were there, **digging** ❸.

Asser **ran over to** ❹ his parents. When his parents saw them, they looked **surprised** ❺.

"Asser! What are you doing here?" asked his dad.

Asser replied, "Shady and his dad **invited** ❻ me to come to the park. Grandma said it was OK."

Asser looked down and saw his dad's **muddy boots** ❼. "But what are you doing here?" he asked.

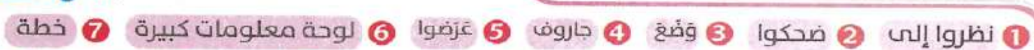
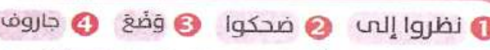


❶ على الجهة الأخرى ❷ مجموعة من ❸ يحفرون ❹ جرى إلى
❺ متفاجئون ❻ دعوا ❼ حذاء طويل مغطى بالوحل

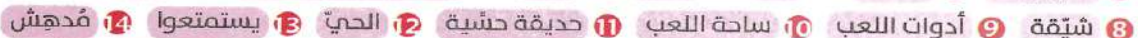
Asser's parents **looked at** ❶ each other and **laughed** ❷. His dad **put down** ❸ his **spade** ❹. They **showed** ❺ Asser and Shady a **large information board** ❻ with a **plan** ❼ on it. The plan showed **lots of exciting** ❽ new **play equipment** ❾.

"We're making a **playground** ❿ with a **sensory garden** ⓫. It's for all the children in the **neighborhood** ⓬ to **enjoy** ⓭," said Salma.

Shady's dad arrived. "Wow! This is going to be **amazing** ⓮," he said

❶ نظروا إلى ❷ ضحكوا ❸ وضع ❹ جاروف ❺ عرضوا ❻ لوحة معلومات كبيرة ❼ خطة



❽ شيّقة ❾ أدوات اللعب ❿ ساحة اللعب ⓫ حديقة حسية ⓬ الحيّ ⓭ يستمتعوا ⓮ مُدهش

## Questions with their model answers

### 1 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. There was a group of people working in the park. (.............)
2. Shady's parents were digging in the park. (.............)
3. Asser's parents looked surprised when they saw him. (.............)
4. Shady and his dad invited Mayar to come to the park. (.............)
5. Asser's dad's boots were muddy. (.............)
6. Asser's dad used a spade for digging. (.............)
7. There was a plan on the large information board. (.............)
8. The information board showed some boring play equipment. (.............)
9. Asser's mom and dad were making a playground with a sensory garden. (.............)

### 2 Complete the following sentences:

1. Asser's parents were ................. in the park.
2. Asser's parents looked ................. when they saw him.
3. Shady and his dad invited Asser to come to the ................. .
4. Asser's dad's ................. were muddy.
5. Asser's dad was digging with a ................. .
6. The plan showed lots of exciting new play ................. .
7. The children's parents made a playground with a ................. .
8. The sensory garden was made for all the children in the ................. .

### 3 Answer the following questions:

1. What were Asser's parents doing in the park?
   ▶ ........................................................................................ .
2. Why did Asser go to the park?
   ▶ ........................................................................................ .

**3.** What did Asser see when he looked down?

▶ ................................................................................................ .

**4.** Why did Asser's parents have muddy boots? SB

▶ ................................................................................................ .

**5.** What did Asser's parents do when they saw him?

▶ ................................................................................................ .

**6.** What was Asser's parents' secret? SB

▶ ................................................................................................ .

**7.** What did Asser's parents show him?

▶ ................................................................................................ .

**8.** What did Asser and Shady see on the information board?

▶ ................................................................................................ .

## Answers

### 1 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

| 1- T | 2- F | 3- T | 4- F | 5- T | 6- T | 7- T | 8- F | 9- T |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|

### 2 Complete the following sentences:

| 1- digging | 2- surprised | 3- park | 4- boots | 5- spade |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 6- equipment | 7- sensory garden | | 8- neighborhood | |

### 3 Answer the following questions:

**1.** They were digging.

**2.** Because Shady and his dad invited him to come.

**3.** He saw his dad's muddy boots.

**4.** Because they were digging in the park.

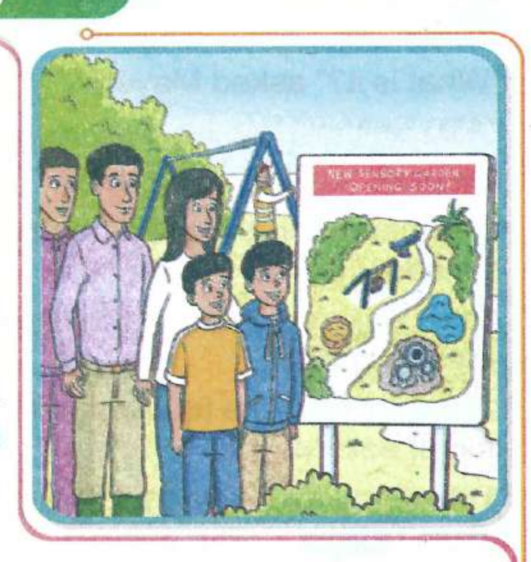
**5.** They looked at each other and laughed.

**6.** They were making a playground with a sensory garden.

**7.** They showed him a large information board with a plan on it.

**8.** They saw lots of exciting new play equipment.

## Part (6)




"What's a sensory garden?" asked Shady.

"A sensory garden is a place where you can hear, see, and touch all **kinds** ❶ of **interesting** ❷ things," said Asser's dad. "Mayar and lots of other children couldn't use some of the **equipment** ❸ in the **old** ❹ playground. So, we're working with these **builders** ❺ to make a **space** ❻ that everybody can enjoy. There's a **fountain** ❼, and there will be **wind chimes** ❽ for **relaxing sounds** ❾. There will be **wide paths** ❿, so it's **easy for** ⓫ people in **wheelchairs** ⓬ to enjoy the garden."

"We're **planting flowers** ⓭, too," said Asser's mom. "They will smell **beautiful** ⓮."

"This is awesome," said Asser. "Is this why you've been so busy?"

❶ أنواع ❷ ممتعة ❸ أدوات ❹ قديم ❺ بنائين ❻ مساحة ❼ نافورة ❽ أجراس الرياح
❾ أصوات مريحة للأعصاب ❿ دُروب واسعة ⓫ سهل على ⓬ كراسي متحركة ⓭ نزرع الزهور ⓮ جميلة



"Yes, it is! We didn't tell you about it because it's a **surprise** ❶!" said his dad.

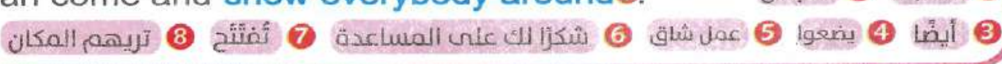
"**I'd love to** ❷ do something to help, **too** ❸!" said Asser.

"Great!" said his mom. "The builders are **putting in** ❹ the big equipment next week, but you can help us plant the flowers."

"You can hang the wind chimes, too," said his dad.

Asser and Shady started helping. It was **hard work** ❺, but the boys had fun.

"**Thank you for helping** ❻!" said Asser's mom. "When this **opens** ❼ next week, you can come and **show everybody around** ❽."


❶ مفاجأة ❷ أحب أن ❸ أيضًا ❹ يضعوا ❺ عمل شاق ❻ شكرًا لك على المساعدة ❼ تُفتتح ❽ تريهم المكان

## The Reader

The next weekend, the children's Mom said, "Mayar, we have a surprise!"

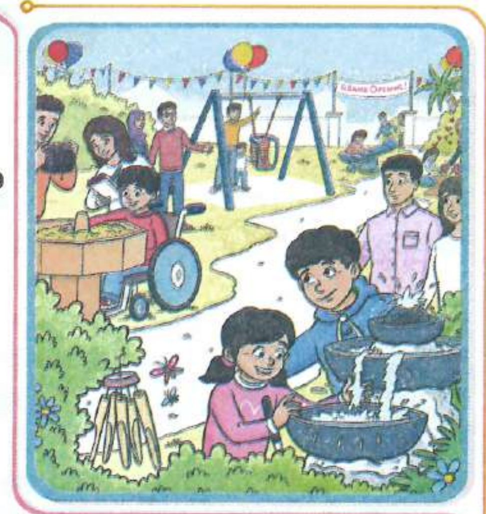
"What is it?" asked Mayar.

"We can't tell you. It's a secret ❶. Let's all go to the park," said Mayar's dad.

"You can hang the wind chimes, too," said his dad.

Asser enjoyed showing Mayar around the sensory garden.

"I love it here! The fountain is my favorite ❷ thing!" said Mayar.



"Thank you for helping us, Asser," said their mom, "and don't worry ❸ – we haven't forgot ❹ your concert!"

❶ سر ❷ مُفضَّلة ❸ لا تقلق ❹ ننسى

## Questions with their model answers

### 1 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. A sensory garden is a place where you can hear, see and touch interesting things. (............)
2. Asser and some children couldn't use some of the equipment in the old playground. (............)
3. There is a fountain in the sensory garden. (............)
4. There will be wind chimes for relaxing sounds. (............)
5. It's difficult for people in wheelchairs to enjoy in the garden. (............)
6. The children's parents are planting some flowers in the sensory garden. (............)
7. Asser and Shady didn't help the parents in the sensory garden. (............)
8. Shady and Asser worked hard in the sensory garden. (............)
9. Mayar was happy when she knew about the surprise of the sensory garden. (............)
10. Asser enjoyed showing Mayar around the sensory garden. (............)
11. Mayar's favorite thing in the sensory garden was the fountain. (............)
12. Asser's parents forgot his concert. (............)

## 2 Complete the following sentences:

1. A .................. is a place where you can hear, see and touch interesting things.
2. Mayar couldn't use some of the equipment in the old .................. .
3. There are some wind chimes for ......... sounds in the sensory garden.
4. There will be wide paths for people in ............... to enjoy the garden.
5. The .................. smell beautiful in the sensory garden.
6. The .................. are putting in the big equipment next week.
7. Asser's mom asked him to .................. the wind chimes.
8. Mayar's favorite thing in the sensory garden is the .................. .

## 3 Answer the following questions:

1. What's a sensory garden?
2. What was wrong with the old playground? SB
3. Who will be able to use the new sensory garden? SB
4. Which things in the sensory garden can people touch? SB
5. Which things in the sensory garden can people hear? SB
6. Which things in the sensory garden can people smell? SB
7. Why did they make wide paths in the sensory garden?
8. Why didn't Asser's parents tell him about the sensory garden?
9. What did Asser and Shady do in the sensory garden?
10. When will the sensory garden open?
11. Who showed Mayar around the sensory garden?
12. What is Mayar's favorite thing in the sensory garden? SB
13. Who is your favorite character in the story? Why? SB
14. Which is your favorite part of the story? Why? SB
15. Do you like the story? Why/Why not? SB
16. What are the morals of the story? SB

## Answers

### 1 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1- T | 2- F | 3- T | 4- T | 5- F | 6- T |
| 7- F | 8- T | 9- T | 10- T | 11- T | 12- F |

## 2 Complete the following sentences:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1- sensory garden | 2- playground | 3- relaxing | 4- wheelchairs |
| 5- flowers | 6- builders | 7- hang | 8- fountain |

## 3 Answer the following questions:

**1.** It's a place where you can hear, see and touch all kinds of interesting things.

**2.** Mayar and some children couldn't use some of the old equipment in it. There wasn't enough space for people in wheelchairs to move easily.

**3.** Mayar, some children in the neighborhood and the people in wheelchairs.

**4.** They can touch the fountains.

**5.** They can hear the relaxing sounds of the wind chimes.

**6.** They can smell the beautiful flowers.

**7.** To make it easy for people in wheelchairs to enjoy the garden.

**8.** They wanted to make a surprise.

**9.** They planted the flowers and hung the wind chimes.

**10.** Next week.

**11.** Asser enjoyed doing that.

**12.** The fountain.

**13.** Suggested Answer:

- My favorite character in the story is the children's Grandma. Because she is kind and helpful.
- My favorite character in the story is Asser. Because he takes care of his sister. He always helps his parents.

**14.** Suggested Answer:

- My favorite part of the story is the last part when they opened the sensory garden. Because everyone was happy and they all enjoyed in the sensory garden.

**15.** • Yes, I like the story very much. Because it encourages people to be helpful and kind.

**16.** Suggested Answer:

- Helping our family is a very important thing.
- It is important to think about everyone in our community.

Term 1

ملحوظة هامة: نصوص الاستماع موجودة في آخر كتاب الملحق.

# Step Ahead Series

Together to a bright future

# CONNECT PLUS

# 6

Units Revision

Revision Tests

Answer Key

Listening Scripts

# Content

Part 1

## Unit 1 Revision

### 1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

**clay - happy - messy - relaxing - paints**

Noha's favorite activity is painting. She always feels ① .................... when she's painting. If she's sad, she ② .................... . Hesham doesn't feel happy when he's painting. He prefers making things with his hands. His favorite activity is making pottery. He thinks it's ③ .................... . Noha doesn't agree. She doesn't like getting her hands ④ .................... . She thinks it's uncomfortable to have ⑤ .................... on her hands.

### 2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

**solid – art – bubbles – irregular – sculpture**

Anish Kapoor is a sculptor who was born in India and studied art in the UK. He makes large pieces of ① .................... that people can see in public places. Tall Tree and the Eye is his famous ② .................... outside the Guggenheim Museum in Bilbao, Spain. It is made from 73 stainless steel round spheres that look like ③ .................... . The spheres are arranged in an ④ .................... pattern and they look like they are floating in the air.

### 3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

**damage - reflects - outdoor – Stainless steel – strong**

Kapoor, the famous sculptor, used three large metal sticks to make his famous sculpture Tall Tree and the Eye ① .................... . ② .................... is a good metal for ③ .................... art because it stays shiny and the weather doesn't damage it. Kapoor's sculpture in Chicago, USA called Cloud Gate, ④ .................... the sky, the buildings, and the people around it.

## 4 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

**theater – choir – costume – photography – play**

It is two weeks until the school show, and everybody is excited. Ten actors are going to act in the ① .................................. at the theater on Friday. Nadine and Sarah are going to sing in the school ② .................................. . Fares is going to bring his camera because he loves ③ .................................. . Mom is making me a ④ .................................. to wear at the school show. We saw an advertisement for the show at the town hall.

## 5 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

**kiln – clay – wheel – decorated – apron**

My name is Amira. My class worked on a pottery project last week. I started with a lump of ① .................................. . I chose to make a bowl. First, the teacher showed us how to use a pottery ② .................................. . I put on an ③ .................................. over my clothes. I put my clay on the wheel. When my bowl was finished, the teacher put it in a ④ .................................. . Finally, the bowl was ready. I used special paint to decorate it.

## 6 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

**sculptures – jewelry – bottles – shells – cloth**

If you are creative, you can enter our new competition. There are different activities you can join the competition with. You can use leaves or ① .................................. in outdoor art. You can use different colored beads to make ② .................................. . You can use plastic ③ .................................. or cardboard in junk modeling. Wood or clay are good things to use for ④ .................................. . You can use a computer to make an animation.

## 7 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

**Ali** : Hi, Ahmed. Did you read about Anish Kapoor?
**Ahmed** : Hi, Ali. Yes, sure. He is a great ① .................................. .
**Ali** : ② .................................. was he born?
**Ahmed** : He was born in India.
**Ali** : What materials does he use for making sculptures?
**Ahmed** : He uses ③ .................................. for making his sculptures.
**Ali** : Why does he use stainless steel?
**Ahmed** : Because it's a very strong material and it's good for ④ .................................. sculptures.

## 8 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

**Jana** : Hana! Guess what?
**Hana** : What happened, Jana?
**Jana** : I worked on a ① .................................. project at school this week.
**Hana** : Really? How did you start?
**Jana** : I started with a lump of ② .................................. .
**Hana** : What did you choose to make?
**Jana** : I chose to make a ③ .................................. .
**Hana** : What did you use to decorate it?
**Jana** : I used special ④ .................................. to decorate it. I painted it pink.

## 9 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

**Talia** : Hi, Tamara.
**Tamara** : Hi, Talia.
**Talia** : I joined a new ① .................................. at school this term.
**Tamara** : What activity do you have in this club?
**Talia** : I'm learning to use computers to make ② .................................. .
**Tamara** : How can you make animations?
**Talia** : I can make them by using technology and moving ③ .................. .
**Tamara** : What can an animation tell?
**Talia** : It can tell a great ④ .................................. !

## 10 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. colored – used – I – jewelry – beads – to make.
▶ ............................................................ .

2. yourself – do – express – like to – How – you?
▶ ............................................................ ?

3. box – a cardboard – make – can you – with – What?
▶ ............................................................ ?

4. activity – favorite – pottery – making – His – is.
▶ ............................................................ .

5. poem – the – of – A verse – a part – is.
▶ ............................................................ .

6. week – There – next – is – concert – a.
▶ ............................................................ .

7. own – writes – Mazen – his – songs.
▶ ............................................................ .

8. costumes – make – going to – I'm – the choir – for.
▶ ............................................................ .

9. play – He – any – instrument – can't – musical.
▶ ............................................................ .

10. songs – sing – to – The choir – is going – beautiful.
▶ ............................................................ .

11. well – guitar – plays – really – Malak – the.
▶ ............................................................ .

12. stage – Nadine – performing – on – loves.
▶ ............................................................ .

13. is – a hot oven – for – pottery hard – making – A kiln.
▶ ............................................................ .

14. photographer – like – Do – being – a – you?
▶ ............................................................ ?

15. clothes – How about – your – designing – own?

▶ ........................................................................................................?

16. uncomfortable – It's – clay – to have – my hands – on.

▶ ........................................................................................................ .

## 11 Choose the correct answer: Vocabulary

1. Your hands get messy when you try (animation - junk modeling - pottery).
2. I can use leaves or (cloth - shells - bracelets) to make some outdoor art.
3. Mayar uses colored (beads - rocks - cloth) to make jewelry.
4. Khaled uses his computer skills to make an (imagination - animation - explanation). He makes pictures move.
5. Huda uses plastic bottles and lids in (junk modeling - designing clothes - making jewelry).
6. If you (buy - drink - mix) red and yellow, you make orange.
7. If I do something creative, I (feel - find - make) happy.
8. A person whose job is playing music is called a (teacher - musician - doctor).
9. You should wear an (uniform - apron - earring) over your clothes for your pottery project.
10. Changing photos to make them better is called (editing - advertisement - exhibition).
11. (Costumes - Shorts - Trousers) are special clothes that people wear at festivals or on stage.
12. Nadine and Sarah sing at the school (film - exhibition - concert). They make a good choir.
13. Stainless steel is a very strong (material - rock - stone).
14. A (sphere - bubble - sculptor) is a liquid ball full of air.
15. It's usually (dark - quiet - sunny) in the morning.
16. When a mirror shows an image, it (watches - understands - reflects) the image.
17. He is a (sculptor - vet - poet). He wrote lots of poems.

18. If you put your brush in water, you (dry - clean - paint) it.
19. The (kiln - lump - paint) makes the clay hard and strong.
20. The (actors - painters - choir) is a group of people who sing together.




## 12 Choose the correct answer: (The Zero Conditional)

1. If it is cold, (wear - wears - wearing) a jacket.
2. If it's too hot outside, we can (stays - staying - stay) inside the house.
3. If my little brother (was - is - were) hungry, he cries.
4. When you (finished - finishes - finish) your homework, give it to your teacher.
5. When dad (doesn't - didn't - don't) water the plants, they die.
6. When she runs, she (is feeling - feels - was feeling) happy.
7. When Lara (meets - met - are meeting) her friends, they have a good time.
8. When I (walk - walks - walking) in the park, I get lots of ideas for outdoor art.
9. If it starts to rain, (use - using - uses) an umbrella.
10. How (did - does - do) you feel when you are painting?
11. If it's sunny tomorrow, we (can - won't - can't) go to the park.

## 13 Choose the correct answer: (Prepositional Phrases)

1. Nadine loves performing (on - in - under) stage.
2. Singers often get nervous (after - before - on) a concert.
3. He never puts his cello (behind - in - after) the door.
4. I try to breathe slowly (before - after - behind) hard work to help me relax.
5. The tiger ran (on - through - for) the forest.
6. Hana goes to the beach (in - into - on) sunny days.
7. I go home (before - through - after) school.

8. Sama puts her pencils (in - at - for) the pencil case.
9. You should eat healthy food. It's good (before - for - after) you.
10. My friends came (on - into - for) my room and looked for my guitar.

## 14 Write an email to your friend Nadine: (4Ms)

Tell her about your school concert. Your favorite musical instrument and your musical skills. Tell her how you performed on that day. Your email address is sohaila@gmail.com and your friend's email address is nadine@school.com.

.......................................................................................................
.......................................................................................................
.......................................................................................................
.......................................................................................................
.......................................................................................................

# Unit 1 Test 1

Total 30

نصا الاستماع موجودان آخر الكتاب.

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (4Ms)



1. There are different (shows - races - competitions - champions) from time to time.
2. They want children between the ages of (five and fifteen- six and fifteen - four and fifteen - seven and seventeen) to send their creative works.
3. Their works will appear in a big art exhibition in the city (museum - castle - park - bank)!
4. Children could (hold - stand - send - draw) a painting, a photo, a poem, or a story or any other creative work.

## 2 Listen and answer the questions: (2Ms)



1. When was the party? ▶ ..............................................
2. What did Fatma and her friends do in the party? ▶ ..............................................



## 3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box: (4Ms)

**story – animation – activities – express – technology**

How do you like to ① .................................... yourself? There are many different creative ② .................................... to get you excited. If you prefer using ③ ...................................., you could use your computer skills to make an ④ .................................... . Moving pictures can tell a great story! There are so many things you can do!

## 4 Read the following text and then answer the questions below: (4Ms)

English is an interesting language. It's spoken by a lot of people in different countries. Still, more people are learning it all over the world. Learning English is not so difficult. But, if you don't use it, you will forget it. English language gives you the real chance to read and know how other people think and live. This will make you know a lot about the wide world. If you ever think of going to foreign countries, you will find English more and more useful. Good English also gives you better chances for work.

### A Choose the correct answer:

1. The English language is (enjoyable – difficult – boring – uncomfortable).
2. The underlined word "it" refers to (the world – people – English – country).

### B Answer these questions:

3. Where is English spoken?
4. What will happen if you don't use English?

## The Reader - Hassan Fathy: A biography

## 5 A- Read and write T (True) or F (False): (4Ms)

1. Hassan Fathy was a famous Egyptian teacher. (          )

2. Hassan Fathy was born in Alexandria. (        )

**B Answer the following questions:**

3. Which two cities did Hassan Fathy live in as a child? ▶ ........................ .
4. What was Hassan Fathy's favorite subject? ▶ ........................ .

## 6 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. The lights make the sky as (bright - bored - clear - fresh) as day.
2. If you have a fever, (doesn't - don't - can't - didn't) go to school.
3. If you finish your homework, you can (watches - watching - watch - watched) TV.
4. I used special paint to (decorate - buy - compare - fill) my bowl.
5. A story that you watch at the theater is a (play - movie - film - match).
6. Nour goes to school (after - before - in - under) having breakfast.

## 7 Order the words to make a correct sentence: (2Ms)

1. a photography - for - There - an advertisement - exhibition - was.

▶ ........................................................................ .

2. You - use - can - to make - jewelry- beads.

▶ ........................................................................ .

## 8 Write an email to your friend jana: (4Ms)

Tell her about the last play you watch at the theatre. Tell her about the characters, decorations, costumes, and why you like it. Your email address is mona@gmail.com. Your friend's email is jana@gmail.com.

........................................................................

........................................................................

........................................................................

........................................................................

........................................................................

# Unit 2 Revision

## 1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

**school – PC – cartoons – light – apartment**

Hi, I'm Sama. My family and I moved to a new ① .................... last Monday. I love my new bedroom. It's very ② .................... and comfortable. I have a long desk for my ③ .................... so I can do my homework in my bedroom. I can watch ④ .................... with my friends in my bedroom, too.

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

**milkshakes – blade – chops – saves – motor**

Stephen Poplawski invented the blender in 1922. He put a sharp ① .................... in the bottom of a tall glass. When the blade turns, it ② .................... the food. He added a small ③ .................... .The motor turned the blade, which blended the food together. He used his new invention to make ④ .................... .

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

**desk – electricity – whiteboard – outage – cable**

My name is Mariam. I had a strange day at school yesterday. My class and I had a power ① ....................! We were looking at the interactive ② ...................., when suddenly all the information disappeared. We got an extension ③ .................... and tried a different power socket, but that wasn't working either. We knew that there was no ④ ....................!



## 4 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

**computer – microwave – broke – blender – fix**

John's family had a robot called Bill. The Bill suddenly ① .................................. down. It fell to the ground, and its lights went out. The family started trying to do things by themselves. They learned how to use a ② .................................. to make milkshakes. Mom learned how to use the ③ .................................. to heat the food. Dad tried to learn how to ④ .................................. his car, but it was too difficult.

## 5 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

**put away – tidy up – mop up – put out – hang up**

Hi, I'm Dina. We are very busy today. It's time to clean up our house. Mom will ① .................................. the clothes. My sister will ② .................................. the garbage. My brother will ③ .................................. his room. I will ④ .................................. the dishes and clean up the kitchen. We will all help each other

## 6 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

**milk – chin – couch – attention – stroke**

Cats need lots of ① .................................. to feel safe. You should ② .................................. a cat by moving your hand over it's back or under its ③ .................................. . Cats love this! They like a warm, comfortable bed, but sometimes they just sleep on the ④ .................................. ! Cats need to sleep for about 15 hours every day.

## 7 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

**hole – house – vacation – memories – spare**

Hady was on a school ① .................................... yesterday. He went to visit his grandmother's house. He looked for his old books and photos. He found them in the ② .................................... room. He was very glad because he has great ③ .................................... of growing up in this ④ .................................... . He found things from his childhood.

## 8 Read and complete the text with the words from the box: Activity Book

**decorations - food - house - living room - party - presents**

It's Grandma's birthday next week and we're organizing a special ① .................................... for her. If we don't tell her, it'll be a big surprise. Uncle Amir and his family are arriving on Friday. If they bring lots of ② .................................... we'll hide them in my room. Mom is going to cook lots of special ③ .................................... . If the weather is not too hot, we'll all eat outside. I'm helping my sister to make a cake. We're going to use mom's new food mixer. Dad is buying some special ④ .................................... for the house. It will look really pretty when we put lots of lights around the ⑤ .................................... . Everyone will come to our house an hour before lunch. Then Dad will drive to Grandma's ⑥ .................................... to collect her. It's going to be great!

## 9 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue: Activity Book

**Granddad** : Rasha, let's tidy up the house before your mom gets home. I've washed the dishes.

**Rasha** : OK, Granddad. I'll ① .................................... the dishes and then I'll ② .................................... the kitchen.

**Granddad** : Good. I'll ③ .................................... the garbage. It's too heavy for you to carry.

**Rasha** : Thanks, Granddad. Would you like me to ④ ....................................

Hesham's toys and put them in his room?

**Granddad** : Yes, please. Could you ⑤ .................................. your dad's jacket in the hall cupboard?

**Rasha** : OK. When we've finished this, I'll ⑥ .................................. the orange juice from the table.

## 10 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

**Sarah** : Hi, Nada. Would you like a robot to help you around the house?

**Nada** : Hi, Sarah. Yes, it will be a great idea.

**Sarah** : What does it ① .................................. like?

**Nada** : It has two round blue eyes, two arms and blue body.

**Sarah** : What it is made ② .................................. ?

**Nada** : It's made from plastic and ③ .................................. .

**Sarah** : What can it do?

**Nada** : It can pick up my books and ④ .................................. my room.

## 11 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue: Activity Book

**Salma** : I want to buy some plants.

**Manar** : That's a good idea.

**Salma** : Where can I buy an indoor plant?

**Manar** : You can buy indoor plants from supermarkets, ① .......................... , and garden centers.

**Salma** : Where should I put my indoor plant?

**Manar** : In a ② .................................. place with a lot of light.

**Salma** : Do plants need ③ .................................. ?

**Manar** : Yes. You can feed them with fertilizer.

**Salma** : How often should I ④ .................................. the plant?

**Manar** : It's better to give them too little water than too much.

**Salma** : Thanks for your help.

**Manar** : You are welcome.

## 12 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. his room – Seleem – his brother – shares – Maged – with.
▶ .................................................................................................... .
2. the piano – I – play – sometimes – room – in my.
▶ .................................................................................................... .
3. books – swapping – Noha – comic – likes.
▶ .................................................................................................... .
4. cartoons – Kareem – TV – on – watches.
▶ .................................................................................................... .
5. violin – you – Can – the – play?
▶ .................................................................................................... ?
6. of – blender – the – is – What – made?
▶ .................................................................................................... ?
7. illness – from – people – protects – A vaccine.
▶ .................................................................................................... .
8. kitchen – up – cleaning – Omar – the – is.
▶ .................................................................................................... .
9. messy – bedroom – very – Your – is.
▶ .................................................................................................... .
10. flowers – and plants – Turtles – eat – like to.
▶ .................................................................................................... .
11. hair – have – Cats – soft – a lot of.
▶ .................................................................................................... .
12. yesterday – We – outage – had – power – a.
▶ .................................................................................................... .
13. for – your blender – use – you – do – What?
▶ .................................................................................................... ?
14. clean – should – I – How – my – indoor plant?
▶ .................................................................................................... ?
15. live – in – apartment – an – Do – you?
▶ .................................................................................................... ?

## 13 Choose the correct answer: Vocabulary

1. Mona sleeps in her (bedroom - dining room - living room).
2. I like (swapping - playing - watching) comic books.
3. I (watch cartoons - do push-ups - play the violin) on TV.
4. She likes playing (volleyball - tennis - chess). It's a board game.
5. My brother is very (lazy - sporty - funny). He plays a lot of volleyball.
6. I (play - chat - move) to my friends online.
7. The (motor - milkshake - blade) is a drink that is often made with milk and ice cream.
8. The (invention - vaccine - appliance) is something which protects people from illness.
9. A (motor - blade - glass) is the part of a machine that makes it move.
10. Amira had a (power - cable - socket) outage in her school yesterday.
11. There is an (electricity - interactive - extension) whiteboard in my class.
12. She uses the (hairdryer - refrigerator - microwave) to heat the food.
13. My father needs to (cook - change - iron) the car battery to go to work.
14. I (tidy up - put out - put away) my room on weekends.
15. She hangs up her (garbage - clothes - dishes) before she goes to bed.
16. Could you (hang - pick - mop) up the water, please?
17. A (wall - brick - room) is a small block for building.
18. We don't need electricity for a (bicycle - refrigerator - laptop).
19. The cat needs a scratch post to sharpen its (ears - claws - eyes).
20. (Cats - Turtles - Lions) like to eat flowers and plants.




## 14 Choose the correct answer: Structures

1. You can sometimes buy indoor plants at a florist. (This is - This means that) a shop which sells cut flowers for the home. SB
2. You have to water your plants gently. (This is - This means that) you add the water slowly. SB



3. You should buy your cat a collar. (This means that - This is) a long thin piece of leather to wear around its neck. SB
4. If we (have - has - had) fruit and milk, we will make a milkshake.
5. Ali is cleaning (in - up - away) the kitchen.
6. She can make a hot drink if she (boil - boiled - boils) water in this kettle.
7. Farida has put (through - away - out) the dishes.
8. If it's sunny tomorrow, we can (go - goes - going) to the park.
9. Fares needs to pick (on - in - up) his toys from the floor.
10. If I put food in the refrigerator, it (is - are - will) be cold.
11. Dad has put (up - out - away) the garbage.
12. She (will - won't - may) use the laptop to do her homework. I'm not sure.
13. People (will get - won't get - doesn't get) sick if they have a vaccine.
14. Mom uses the blender (to - for - in) make delicious soups.
15. If it's hot tomorrow, I'll (making - to make - make) a smoothie with fruit and ice!
16. Mom can take you to school (and - but - if) you ask her now.
17. We'll play video games with the games console if my friends (come - coming - comes) to my house.
18. Can you put (up - in - away) the dishes?
19. If you arrive early, you can (gets - get - getting) a good seat.
20. If she (ate - eats - eating) a big breakfast, she won't be hungry later.
21. His teacher will be angry with him if he (comes - don't come - doesn't come) to the class on time.
22. If he eats too much, he (feels - will feel - won't feel) comfortable.

## 15 Write a paragraph of (60) words using the following elements:

***"Chores you help with at home"***

**Ideas to help you:** **kitchen - your room - garbage - clothes - floor**

.....................................................................................................

.....................................................................................................

.....................................................................................................

.....................................................................................................

.....................................................................................................




## Unit 2 Test 2

نصا الاستماع موجودان آخر الكتاب.

### 1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (4Ms)



1. Turtles like to eat (trees - birds - flowers - insects) and plants.
2. You can buy special turtle (drink - food - juice - milk).
3. The heat lamp is a special light to keep the turtle nice and (light - cold - sick - warm).
4. Turtles like sleeping in a safe, (dark - light - bright - cold) place.

### 2 Listen and answer the questions: (2Ms)



1. What did Tamer and Noha do last week?
   ▶ .......................................................................................................
2. Where did Noha find the message?
   ▶ .......................................................................................................

### 3 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue: (4Ms)

**Mazen** : Do you remember your parent's old house, dad?
**Dad** : Of course.
**Mazen** : How long did you live there?
**Dad** : I lived there for about 20 years.
**Mazen** : Can you tell me about the history of that house?
**Dad** : Of course, it was built from ① .............................. and stone.
**Mazen** : Was it a big house?
**Dad** : Yes, it was very big. There were six ② .............................. in it.
**Mazen** : How ③ .............................. people lived there?
**Dad** : There were eight people.
**Mazen** : Is the house different now?
**Dad** : Not really, the walls are a different color, but I think that's all. I'm glad it hasn't changed because I have such great ④ .................... of growing up there too.



## 4 Read the following text and then answer the questions below: (4Ms)

Last week, mother was cooking two chickens for lunch. While she was standing in the kitchen, she heard a knock at the door. When she went to open the door, she saw her neighbour, Mrs Safaa, there. Mrs Safaa was a cheerful woman. She was interested in having cats at home. She has got six of them. Mrs Safaa spoke with my mother for fifteen minutes about her favorite hobby. Then she told mother that she was looking for a white cat and wanted mother to help her. Mother forgot the food that she was still cooking. The chickens burnt and the kitchen was filled with smoke.

### A Choose the correct answer:

1. The underlined word "them" refers to the (chickens - cats - neighbors - hobbies).
2. Mrs Safaa spoke with mother for a (quarter - third - half - all) of an hour.

### B Answer these questions:

3. What was mother doing when her neighbor visited her?

▶ ........................................................................................................

4. What was Mrs Safaa interested in?

▶ ........................................................................................................

## The Reader - A Wonderful Surprise

## 5 A- Read and write T (True) or F (False): (4Ms)

1. Mayar listened to the radio in the car. (    )
2. Asser saw his dad's shovel inside the garage. (    )

### B Answer the following questions:

3. What was the shovel look like?

▶ ........................................................................................................

4. What did Asser do before the concert?

▶ ........................................................................................................

## 6 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. The (living room - bedroom - bathroom - spare room) is a room used for visitors or to put things in.
2. Cats should go to the (dentist - teacher - nurse - vet) once a year for vaccinations.
3. My mom asked me to (clean up - pick up - hang up - get up) the kitchen.
4. If it's cold tomorrow, I (will - won't - didn't - would) put on my coat.
5. If I (had - is having - has - have) a blender, I can make a smoothie.
6. If she has free time, she (may - will - can - won't) come with us. I am not sure.

## 7 Order the words to make a correct sentence: (2Ms)

1. for – use – the microwave – heating – food – I.

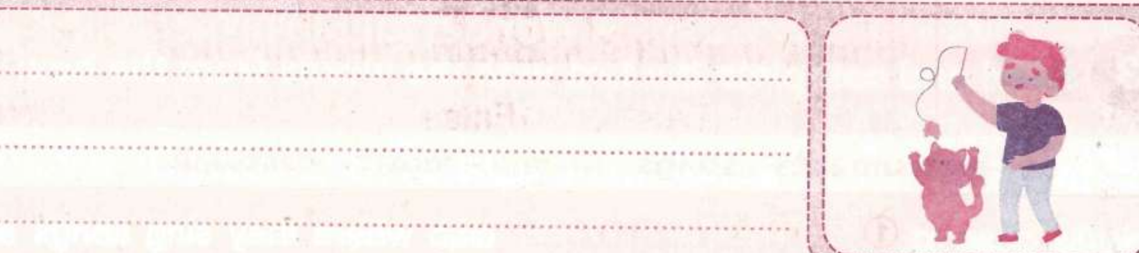
▶ ................................................................................................ .

2. you – put – please - away – Can – the dishes,?

▶ ................................................................................................ ?

## 8 Write a paragraph of (60) words using the following elements: (4Ms)

*"Caring for your cats"*



**Ideas to help you:** eat – meal – vet – drink – sleep – equipment – feel at home

................................................................................

................................................................................

................................................................................

................................................................................

................................................................................

................................................................................

# Unit 3 Revision

## 1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

**boarding - timetable - flexible - reindeer - subjects**

Classrooms are not the same in every school. In Siberia, the children study school ① .................................... like math, science, and computing. The timetable is ② ...................................., so they can help their families with the chores. They also look after ③ .................................... and take them to where there is food. Also, some children go away to ④ .................................... school. These children are away from their families for many months every year.

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

**panels - floods - subjects - electricity - ICT**

Aban lives in Bangladesh. His school is on a boat because sometimes in his country there are ① .............................. . There are 20 children in his class. There are solar ② .............................. on the roof of the boat to make electricity. They need electricity for the computers in their ③ .............................. classes. Aban's favorite ④ .................................... are science, math and art.

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

**instruments - songs - drama - music - costumes**

Nadia goes to ① .................................... club where they sing songs and play ② .................................... . They learn songs from all over the world. At the end of term, they have a concert for their parents.

Amir enjoys going to ③ .............................. club. They learn plays and they act them for their parents. Sometimes they make special ④ .............................. for the actors to wear.

## 4 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

**concert - swimming - competitions - recipe - cooking**

Samer goes to a ① .................................... club. Every week, they make a meal from a different country. They take photos of their meals for a special ② .................................... book. They can take the food home to eat with their families.
Malek goes to a ③ .................................... club three times a week. It makes him healthy and strong. He sometimes does ④ ...................................., too.

## 5 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

**enjoy - palace - scripts - scribe - busy**

I'm Nebsin's younger brother Babu. When I'm older, I'd like to be a ① ......................... like my father. He goes to the Pharaoh's ② ......................... every day and he writes about everything that happens there. It's a very interesting job because the palace is a ③ ......................... place and a lot happens there. It's an important job, too, because the ④ ......................... tell us about the daily life at the palace. I like reading and I enjoy writing, so I think I'd enjoy being a scribe.

## 6 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue: Activity Book

**Nader** : Hi, Alaa! Is studying the past important?
**Alaa** : Hi, Nader! ① ............................ of all, I believe that studying the past helps us understand the present.
**Nader** : What is your opinion about history?
**Alaa** : In my ② ............................, history helps us understand our society and other cultures.
**Nader** : Why do you think that?
**Alaa** : Because we learn about life in the past, important artists, scientists, and politicians. We learn about how and why ③ .................................... has changed over the years. To ④ .................................... up, studying history is an important part of our education.

Term 1

## 7 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. are – green roofs – Why – the environment – for – good?
▶ ........................................................................ ?

2. to – reindeer – help – look after – Nomadic children.
▶ ........................................................................ .

3. boarding – go away – schools – Some children – to.
▶ ........................................................................ .

4. same – every school – the – Classrooms – in – are not.
▶ ........................................................................ .

5. uniform – wear – every – school – my – I – school day.
▶ ........................................................................ .

6. bedroom – sometimes – My – messy – is – brother's.
▶ ........................................................................ .

7. goes – with – his friends – Fares – often – swimming.
▶ ........................................................................ .

8. tennis – Playing – me – makes – healthy – feel.
▶ ........................................................................ .

9. makes – club – hungry – Cooking – me – always!
▶ ........................................................................ !

10. make – plays – Sad – me – unhappy!
▶ ........................................................................ !

11. lunch – do – Where – they – eat?
▶ ........................................................................ ?

12. about – is – Green City School – What – special?
▶ ........................................................................ ?

13. take to – does – it – How long – school – get to?
▶ ........................................................................ ?

14. a new – was – There – metal – bridge.
▶ ........................................................................ .

15. every day – should – in schools – Students – do sports.

▶ .................................................................................................................. .

16. healthy – you – keeps – sports – Playing.

▶ .................................................................................................................. .

## 8 Choose the correct answer: Vocabulary



1. The Shagara at School Projects believes that roof gardens can help students in (city - village) schools. AB
2. Green, outdoor places are great for learning because they make people (tired - calm) and healthy. AB
3. In the past, the children had to go to boarding school, and had to (come home late at night - be away from their families). AB
4. Adel's favorite (sport - timetable - subject) at school is ICT.
5. The (reindeer - mobile - sled) is an animals that lives in the North of Siberia.
6. The (green roof - boarding school - normal classroom) is a great idea, especially in cities.
7. Amr goes to (cooking - swimming - music) club to sing and play the guitar.
8. It's easier to travel on a (bike - car - sled) when there is a lot of snow and ice.
9. The library is green because all it's electricity comes from solar (channels - canals - panels).
10. We (recycle - encourage - stop) you to walk or cycle to school. It's better for the environment.
11. The climbing (frames - farms - forms) are made mostly with recycled materials.
12. This mountain is very (deep - low - steep). It's not easy to climb.
13. The bridge (built - collapsed - repaired) during a storm. It fell down suddenly.
14. In my (opinion - finally - first), all children should learn music at school.

# GRAMMAR REVISION

## 9 Choose the correct answer:

**Structures**

1. Mustafa (doesn't - always - never) plays football. He likes sports.
2. My aunt (live - lives - living) in Cairo.
3. Amr (is always - always is - has always) good to his friends.
4. Farha (never - doesn't - does) helps in the kitchen.
5. How does Aban (go - goes - going) to school?
6. He (has usually - usually has - usually does) cheese for breakfast.
7. Taqwa doesn't often (meets - meet - met) her friends at weekends.
8. Lilly (always eat - eats always - always eats) lunch in the cafeteria.
9. She (never - doesn't - does) have to wear a school uniform.
10. I (walk sometimes - sometimes walks - sometimes walk) to work.
11. We (often goes - often go - go often) shopping in the city center.
12. Sports (make - makes - making) us healthy.
13. (Listening - Listen - Listens) to music makes me feel relaxed.
14. Getting a good grade at school makes (I - me - my) proud.
15. Reading stories (make - makes - making) me excited.
16. (Swim - Swims - Swimming) makes him healthy and strong.
17. Photography makes (my - I - me) excited.
18. Painting (making - make - makes) me feel happy.
19. Marwa said that she (didn't - don't - hadn't) like chocolate.
20. Lina said that the bridge (has collapsed - had collapsed - collapses)!
21. They said that they (hear - hears - had heard) that sound suddenly.
22. The teacher said that visiting old people (is - was - were) a great idea.
23. Sarah (told - said) that her letter had helped everybody!
24. Lina told her friends that she (was seen - had seen - sees) engineers and builders at the river.
25. They said that they (were building - are building - build) a new bridge.

## 10 Write a paragraph of (60) words using the following elements:

*"Going to school clubs is fun"*

**Ideas to help you:** music club - musical instrument - cooking club - make a meal - swimming club - healthy and strong - drama club - act plays

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

# Unit 3 Test 3

Total ___ / 30

نصا الاستماع موجودان آخر الكتاب.

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (4Ms)



1. Sagda goes to school from (Friday - Monday - Sunday - Wednesday) to Thursday.
2. She usually brings her lunch from (store - supermarket - home - school).
3. School finishes at (8 am - 3 pm - 3 am - 8 pm).
4. Sagda likes (Art - English - Math - ICT).

## 2 Listen and answer the questions: (2Ms)



1. What will happen if you play sports?
   ▶ ..........................................................................
2. When do Hamdy and his friends go to the club?
   ▶ ..........................................................................

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box: (4Ms)

**learn - changed - cultures - important - History**

We can learn a lot by studying the past. ① .................... helps us understand our society and other ② .................... because we ③ .................... about life in the past, important artists, scientists, and politicians. In addition, we learn about how and why life has ④ .................... over the years.

## 4 Read the following text and then answer the questions below: (4Ms)

Mustafa likes sports. He goes to a sports club every weekend. He likes playing football. Football is the most famous sport in the world. Mustafa always plays football with his friends. Playing football makes him healthy and fit. He also loves watching football games on TV. His favorite team is Liverpool. His favorite football player is Mohamed Salah. He is the best football player in the world. Mustafa wants to be like Mohamed Salah when he grows up.

### A Choose the correct answer:

1. Mustafa always plays football with his (neighbors - friends - family - teachers).
2. Playing football makes Mustafa (healthy - ill - unhealthy - bored) and fit.

### B Answer these questions:

3. Where does Mustafa play football?
4. Who does Mustafa want to be like when he grows up?

## The Reader - New Baris

## 5 A- Read and write T (True) or F (False): (4Ms)

1. The builders found a well in the desert. (  )
2. Hassan Fathy used mud bricks and windcatchers to make the houses cool. (  )

## B Answer the following questions:

3. Where did Hassan Fathy design a village? ▶ .................................... .
4. Why did the farmers look for water? ▶ .................................... .

## 6 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. The (court - town - house - school) is a place where the pharaoh made important decisions.
2. The engineers and builders (repaired - collapsed - broke - pointed) the bridge.
3. I wear my school (subject - bus - flag - uniform) every school day.
4. She (says - said - talks - tells) that she had helped with the chores.
5. Fady usually (play - plays - is played - is playing) chess with his dad.
6. Running (is made - makes - make - making) you healthy.

## 7 Order the words to make a correct sentence: (2Ms)

1. tried - The boy - to push - the - away - snake. ▶ .................................... .
2. never - school - go to - Fridays - on - We. ▶ .................................... .

## 8 Write an email to your friend Ahmed: (4Ms)

Tell him about your School Open Day. Tell him who you invited and how the day was. Your email address is mazen@hotmail.com. Your friend's email is ahmed@gmail.com.

..........................................................................................
..........................................................................................
..........................................................................................
..........................................................................................
..........................................................................................
..........................................................................................
..........................................................................................

# Unit 4 Revision

## 1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

**expensive - disabilities - comic - movable - built**

David Aguilar Amphoux is from Spain. When he was 18, he ① .................... a prosthetic arm with plastic bricks because he only had one arm. He designed it with a ② .................... elbow and a hand to pick things up. David's dad has written a ③ .................... book about David. Everyone thinks this is great because it helps people understand more about ④ .................... .

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

**hearing - confident - problems - wear - video**

Skye is a little girl who has hearing ① .................... . Skye started a video channel about her life with ② .................... aids. The ③ .................... channel helps her feel more confident. One of the videos explains how to ④ .................... a hearing aid.

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

**information - advertisement - special - bakery - website**

I saw an ① .................... for the new ② .................... in town. They make really special cakes and cookies. They put them in a white box with some pretty paper. If I look at their ③ .................... we could get their address and some more ④ .................... – like what kind of cakes they make and the prices.

## 4 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

**Reem** : Would you like to come ① ........................ with me? I want to buy a present for my mom.

**Mazen** : Oh, that's nice, Reem. Is it her ② ........................ ?

**Reem** : No, it isn't her birthday. I just want to buy her a ③ ........................ for being the best mom. I'm going to use my birthday money from last month.

**Talia** : That's a great idea. My mom always says, "Kindness is important", and that's a kind thing to do. What do you want to buy her?

**Reem** : I don't know. I want you to think with me and give me your ④ ........................ .

## 5 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. someone – shouldn't – to – People – be – unkind.
   ▶ ........................................................................ .
2. and – wears – is – glasses – Shady – tall.
   ▶ ........................................................................ .
3. her teeth – wears – get straight – to help – Injy – braces.
   ▶ ........................................................................ .
4. you – day – What sounds – hear – every – do?
   ▶ ........................................................................ ?
5. finger – spelling – learn – people – do – Where?
   ▶ ........................................................................ ?
6. do – What – you – computer games – think – about?
   ▶ ........................................................................ ?
7. cartoons – think – I – funny – are.
   ▶ ........................................................................ .
8. do – playing football – think about – What – you?
   ▶ ........................................................................ ?
9. like – look – you – do – What?
   ▶ ........................................................................ ?
10. music – to – listening – love – I.
    ▶ ........................................................................ .

## 6 Choose the correct answer: Vocabulary

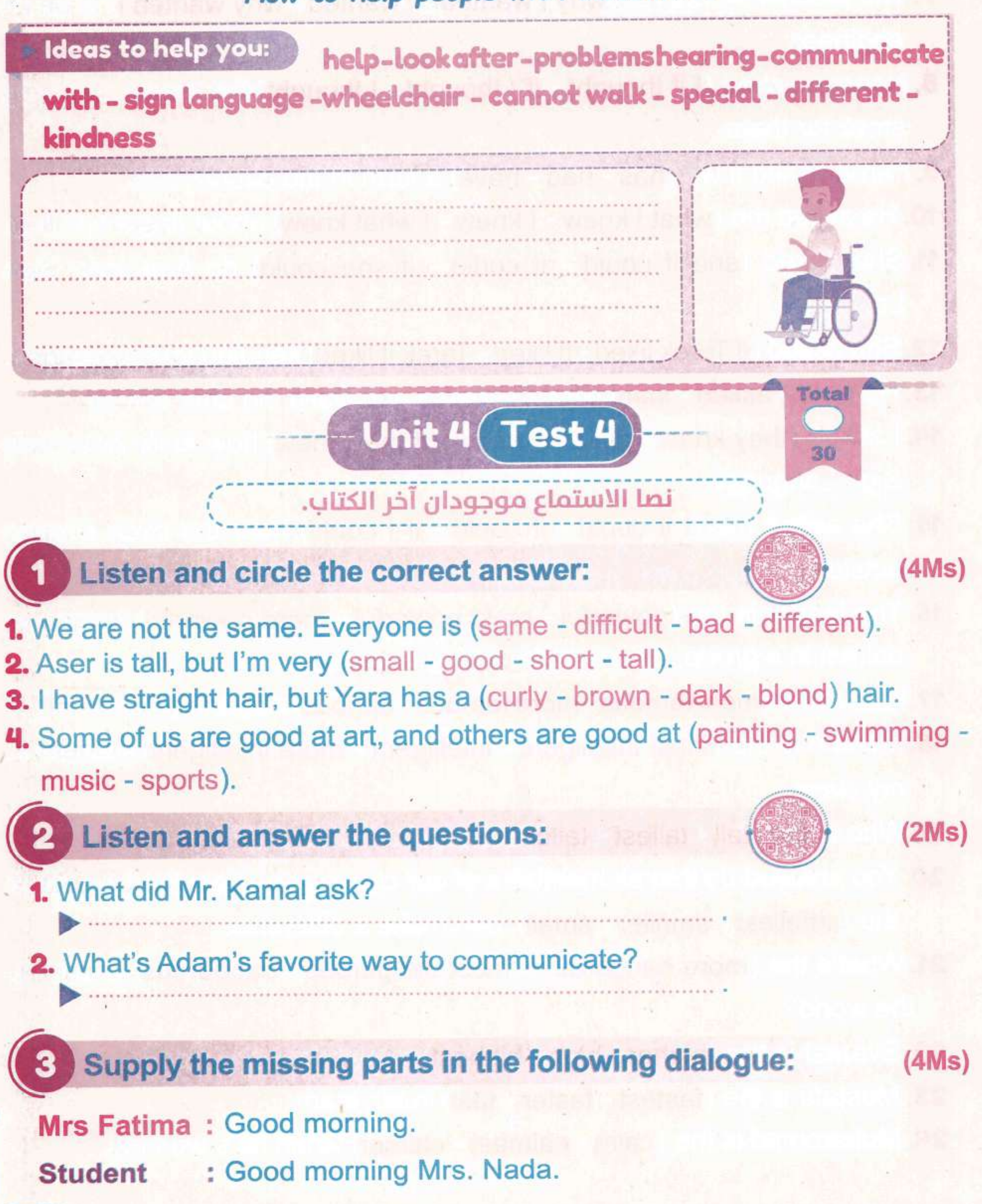
1. People shouldn't be (kind - mean - good) to someone because they're different.
2. Reem uses a (braces - hearing aid - wheelchair). She can't walk well.
3. Lara wears (hearing aid - glasses - braces). She can't see well.
4. Amina has a (glasses - braces - hearing aid). She has problems hearing.
5. Khaled wears (glasses - hearing aid - braces). He wants to get his teeth straight.
6. The opposite of straight is (curly - comfortable - soft).
7. Prosthetic arms and legs can be (cheap - easy - expensive) to make, but David made his prosthetic arm cheaply with plastic bricks.
8. Amira showed Fares (kindness - kind) by inviting him to join her group of friends.
9. That's a (kind - kindness) thing to do. Your mom will love a present.
10. I'm (into - to - on) sports. I play volleyball at my local club.
11. Hana receives a new (talker - walker - sticker) every year to help her walk.
12. Hana (decided - decorated - divided) her new walker with stars and stickers. It looked awesome.
13. He can't walk, he (crawls - walks - runs) along the ground.
14. Hana is a very helpful girl. She always (receives - saves - crawls) the day.
15. My sister is (to - on - into) photography. She takes awesome photos.

## 7 Choose the correct answer:




1. I saw an (advertise - advertisement) for the new bakery in town. AB
2. We could get their address and some more (inform - information). AB
3. My mom always says, "(Kind - Kindness) is important." AB
4. He asked (I know - did I know - if I knew) how to use this machine.
5. My dad (asked - told - said) if I liked school.

6. He asked (if knew - did I know - if she knew) how to speak a second language.
7. The teacher asked me (why I wanted - I wanted - why wanted I) to be an engineer.
8. Nadeen asked (I if thought - if I thought - I thought) the house was very small for them.
9. Farha asked if we (has - had - have) a farm in the countryside.
10. He asked me (what I knew - I knew - I what knew) about finger spelling.
11. She asked (she if could - if could - if she could) do American Sign Language.
12. She asked (if Tarek liked - if liked - Tarek if liked) sending text messages.
13. He (told - asked - said) what Gameela and Dalia did after school.
14. I asked (they knew - did they know - if they knew) how to do American Sign Language.
15. She asked me (I if could - if could - if I could) hear the birds singing outside.
16. The leader is the (powerful - most powerful - more powerful) person or animal in a group, for example, a king or queen.
17. Who is the (most famous - more famous - famous) singer in your country?
18. Mariam is the (most intelligent - intelligent - more intelligent) student in my class.
19. Who is the (tall - tallest - taller) person in your family?
20. You showed us that all members of our community, from the biggest to the (smallest - smaller - small), can make a difference.
21. What's the (more dangerous - most dangerous - dangerous) animal in the world?
22. Everest is the (higher - high - highest) mountain in the world.
23. Mustafa is the (fastest - faster - fast) in his team.
24. Muhammad is the (calm - calmest - calmer) when he's working.



## 8 Write a paragraph of (60) words using the following elements:

*"How to help people with disabilities"*

**Ideas to help you:** help-look after-problems hearing-communicate with - sign language -wheelchair - cannot walk - special - different - kindness

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

Total 30

## Unit 4 Test 4

نصا الاستماع موجودان آخر الكتاب.

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. We are not the same. Everyone is (same - difficult - bad - different).
2. Aser is tall, but I'm very (small - good - short - tall).
3. I have straight hair, but Yara has a (curly - brown - dark - blond) hair.
4. Some of us are good at art, and others are good at (painting - swimming - music - sports).

## 2 Listen and answer the questions: (2Ms)

1. What did Mr. Kamal ask?
   ▶ ..........................................................................................
2. What's Adam's favorite way to communicate?
   ▶ ..........................................................................................

## 3 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue: (4Ms)

**Mrs Fatima** : Good morning.

**Student** : Good morning Mrs. Nada.

**Mrs Fatima** : How are we different to each other?

**Salma** : That's an easy question, we are not the same, Amira is tall and I am very short.

**Ahmed** : Adel uses a ① .................................... because he can't walk well.

**Menna** : I wear ② .................................... because I can't see well.

**Salma** : Habiba wears ③ ........................... to help her teeth get straight.

**Mrs Fatima** : So, people should be kind to each other because we're ④ .................................... .

## 4 Read the following text and then answer the questions below: (4Ms)

Kindness is important. Being kind to others costs no money. Everyone should try to show the quality of kindness to the people around them. Every time you are kind to others, you become a better person. If you are kind, you will remain in the hearts of people for the rest of your life. Your kindness will help you when you are alone, sad or in need during your hard times. People will always help you and stand by you. We must make sure that our behavior and actions do not harm others.

### A Choose the correct answer:

1. If you are (mean - bad - cruel - kind), you will remain in the hearts of people for the rest of your life.
2. Everyone should try to show the quality of (laziness - illness - kindness - sickness) to the people around them.

### B Answer these questions:

3. What must we make sure of?
   ▶ ..........................................................................................................
4. What makes people help you and stand with you?
   ▶ .......................................................................................................... .

Term 1

Test 4

## The Reader - A Wonderful Surprise

### 5 A- Read and write T (True) or F (False): (4Ms)

1. Grandma listened to an audiobook. ( )
2. Asser and Shady had fun in the park. ( )

### B Answer the following questions:

3. How did Asser find out his parents' secret?

▶ ..............................................................................................

4. What did Asser and Shady see on the information board?

▶ ..............................................................................................

### 6 Choose the correct answer: (6Ms)

1. The (leader - teacher - engineer - doctor) is someone like a king or queen.
2. A lion is (more - most - the least - the most) dangerous than a fox.
3. I want to make braces, so I need to go to the (dentist - doctor - vet - nurse)
4. We can do the shopping at the (mall - school - hospital - bank).
5. Heba asked (where - when - what - who) Esraa went on Fridays.
6. Amir is (the best - the most - better - more) player in the team.

### 7 Order the words to make a correct sentence: (2Ms)

1. The tiger - faster - the elephant - than - is.

▶ ..............................................................................................

2. help - your - teeth - grow - correctly - Braces.

▶ ..............................................................................................

### 8 Write an email to your friend Ramy: (4Ms)

Tell him about how we are different to each other. Describe your friends at school. Your email address is alaa@gmail.net. Your friend's email address is ramy@hotmail.com.

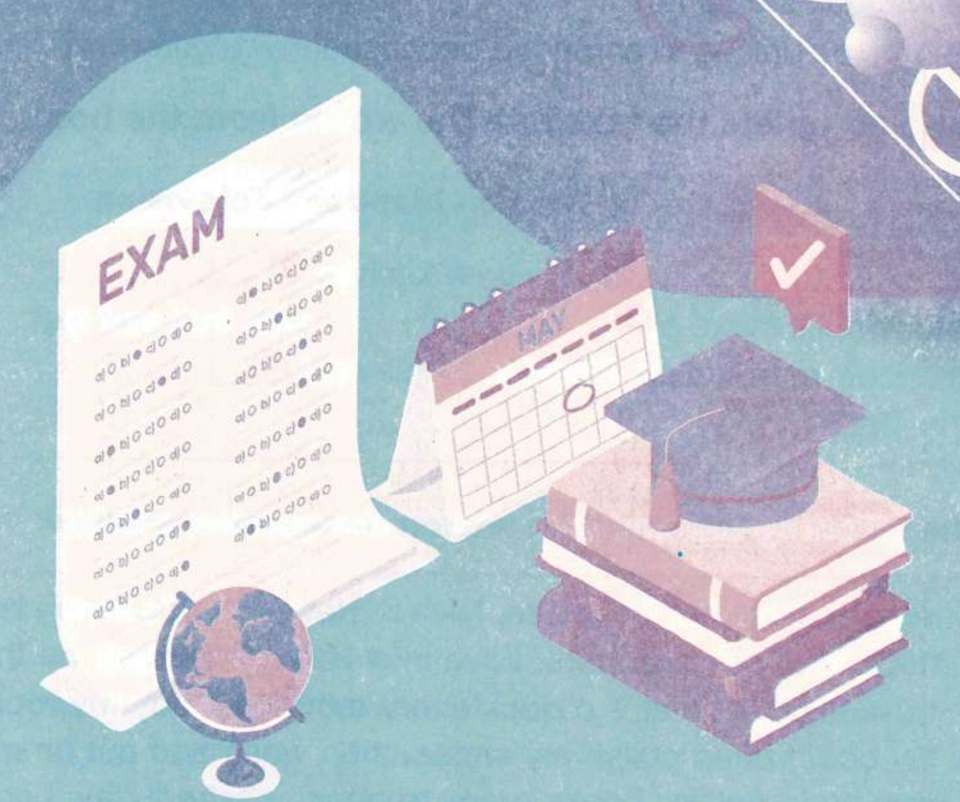
..............................................................................................

..............................................................................................

..............................................................................................

..............................................................................................

# Part 2




# Revision Tests




## Revision Test 1

نصا الاستماع موجودان آخر الكتاب.

### 1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (4Ms)



1. Anish Kapoor is a (painter - scientist - sculptor - doctor).
2. Anish Kapoor was born in (France - England - India - America) in 1954.
3. Anish Kapoor uses (copper - silver - gold - stainless steel) in Tall Tree and the Eye.
4. Stainless steel is a very (weak - strong - expensive - cheap) material.

### 2 Listen and answer the questions: (2Ms)



1. Why don't we look the same?
2. Should people be unkind to someone because they're different?

### 3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box: (4Ms)

**appliance - invented - smoothie - blender - Television**

I think the ① .................................. is the best kitchen ② .................................. .
If it's hot tomorrow, I'll make a ③ .................................. with fruit and ice!
A Polish-American man called Stephen Poplawski ④ .................................. the blender in 1922.

### 4 Read the following text and then answer the questions below: (4Ms)

Hello. My name is Jane. I'm American. I live in New York. It's a very big city. It's famous for its skyscrapers. I live in a very tall scraper on the 15th floor. I usually get up at 7 o'clock every morning. I tidy my room and make my bed. I often polish my shoes, then wash and put on my school uniform and I get my books ready to begin a school day. I ride my bicycle to school. On my way, I pass the Statue of Liberty. People in America came from different countries all over the world. They are of different nationalities. But we are all Americans now and we all speak English language.

## A Choose the correct answer:

1. A skyscraper is a (famous statue - very tall building - big city - small tower).
2. People in America speak (American - English - British - Spain).

## B Answer these questions:

3. Where did the people in America come from?
▶ ................................................................................................ .
4. What does Jane do when she gets up?
▶ ................................................................................................ .

# The Reader - A Wonderful Surprise

## 5 A- Read and write T (True) or F (False): (4Ms)

1. Asser's parents forgot his concert. (        )
2. There was a group of people working in the park. (        )

## B Answer the following questions:

3. Why did Asser's parents have muddy boots?
▶ ................................................................................................ .
4. Who will be able to use the new sensory garden?
▶ ................................................................................................ .

## 6 Choose the correct answer: (6Ms)

1. If you put your brush in water, you (cleans - clean - cleaned - would clean) it.
2. Most (sculptures - jewels - pottery - clothes) are made of gold and silver.
3. We have to put (up - out - on - at) the garbage.
4. School (start - starts - is starting - to start) at 8 am and finishes at 3 pm.
5. A (class - route - herd - leader) is a group of animals like elephants.
6. In my (idea - opinion - extension - thought), electricity is most useful in our free time.

## 7 Order the words to make a correct sentence: (2Ms)

1. Arabic - children - All - at school - should - learn. ▶ .................................... .
2. look - What - like - does - snake - the? ▶ .................................... ?

## 8 Write a paragraph of (60) words using the following elements: (4Ms)

*"My favorite musical instrument"*

**Ideas to help you:** play - guitar - talented - concerts - musician

.................................................................................

.................................................................................

.................................................................................

.................................................................................

.................................................................................

Total ___ / 30

# Revision Test 2

نصا الاستماع موجودان آخر الكتاب.

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (4Ms)

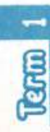
1. A / An (English - French - Polish-American - Indian) man called Stephen Poplawski invented the blender in 1922.
2. He put a sharp blade in the (top - middle - end - bottom) of a tall glass.
3. He added a small (engine - motor - pipe - button).
4. He used his new invention to make (tea - coffee - milkshakes - milk).

## 2 Listen and answer the questions: (2Ms)

1. When did Reem move into a new apartment? ▶ ........................................ .
2. Why is Reem so happy? ▶ ........................................ .

## 3 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue: (4Ms)

**Ahmed** : Have you heard about Anish Kapoor?
**Rana** : Yes, I have. He is a ① .................... . He was born in India in 1954.
**Ahmed** : What is his famous ② ............................?



**Rana** : Tall Tree and the Eye is a famous sculpture by Anish Kapoor.
**Ahmed** : What does he use in Tall Tree and the Eye sculpture?
**Rana** : He uses stainless ③ .................................... .
**Ahmed** : Why did he use it?
**Rana** : Because it is very strong ④ .................................... .

## 4 Read the following text and then answer the questions below: (4Ms)

Wael was sick and Sherif went to visit him. While they were talking, the doctor came. "What's the matter?" asked the doctor. "I've got a terrible pain in my stomach," Wael replied. The doctor felt his stomach, then he looked into his mouth. He walked to the other side of Wael's bed and said, "Stay in bed. You'll be better tomorrow if you don't eat any more sweets." Sherif asked the doctor, "Please, how did you know what was wrong with my friend? "Easy," said the doctor, "I saw a lot of sweets under his bed."

### A Choose the correct answer:

1. Wael's got a pain in his (neck – knee – head – stomach).
3. Sherif is Wael's (friend – brother – cousin – uncle).

### B Answer these questions:

3. What's wrong with Wael?
▶ .................................................................................................... .
4. How did the doctor know what was wrong with him?
▶ .................................................................................................... .

## The Reader - A Wonderful Surprise

## 5 A- Read and write T (True) or F (False): (4Ms)

1. Hassan Fathy's father was an architect. (   )
2. Hassan Fathy loved drawing and painting. (   )

### B Answer the following questions:

3. Where did Hassan study architecture?
▶ .................................................................................................... .

4. What are the special features of Hassan Fathy's buildings?

▶ ..............................................................................................

## 6 Choose the correct answer: (6Ms)

1. (Photography - Painting - Acting - Drawing) is the activity or job of taking photographs.
2. Ayman (often walk - walks often - often walks - walk often) to school.
3. Green roofs are (bad - sad - great - harmful) for the environment.
4. I have lunch in the (library - classroom - playground - cafeteria) at school. It's a place for eating and drinking.
5. Mr Ayman (said - asked - talked - replied) us in what ways we communicated with each other.
6. Sleep eight hours a day. It's good (in - for - at - of) you.

## 7 Order the words to make a correct sentence: (2Ms)

1. to make - use - can - What - a collage - you?

▶ .............................................................................................. ?

2. always - my room - I - tidy up - weekends - on.

▶ .............................................................................................. .

## 8 Write an email to your friend Asmaa: (4Ms)

Tell her about the chores you and your family do every weekend.
Your email address is heba@gmail.com, and your friend's email is asmaa@yahoo.com.

..............................................................................................

..............................................................................................

..............................................................................................

..............................................................................................

..............................................................................................




## Revision Test 3

نصا الاستماع موجودان آخر الكتاب.



### 1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. Give your cat lots of attention so it feels (hungry - thirsty - safe - sleepy).
2. Cats need to sleep (14 - 15 - 18 - 20) hours every day.
3. Cats like a (warm - cool - cold - hot) comfortable bed.
4. (Juice - Milk - Water - Milkshake) is better for cats.



### 2 Listen and answer the questions: (2Ms)

1. What does Sarah think is most useful in our free time?
2. Who does Sarah play video games with?

### 3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box: (4Ms)

**socket - cable - power - disappeared - interactive**

It was a strange day, actually. We had a power outage. We were looking at the ① .................................. whiteboard, when suddenly all the information ② ..................................! The teacher got an extension ③ .................................. and tried a different power ④ .................................. but there was no electricity.

### 4 Read the following text and then answer the questions below: (4Ms)

One day, an old man and a young man were walking in a place full of trees. Suddenly they saw a lion in front of them. The young man ran to a tree and climbed it quickly. The old man tried to climb the tree too, but he was too old to climb it. He fell back to the ground. The old man knew that lions don't eat dead bodies, so he lay on the ground and didn't move. The lion came and smelt <u>him</u> and went away. The young man came down from the tree and the old man stood up. " Did the lion say anything to you?" the young man asked. His friend said, "It told me to look for a better friend."

## A Choose the correct answer:

1. The old man was (foolish – wise – dead – lazy).
2. Lions eat (living – bad – dead – hard) bodies.

## B Answer these questions:

3. What does the underlined word "him" refer to?
▶ ................................................................ .
4. Who wasn't a good friend?
▶ ................................................................ .

## The Reader - A Wonderful Surprise

## 5 A- Read and write T (True) or F (False): (4Ms)

1. There is a fountain in the sensory garden. (      )
2. The information board showed some boring play equipment. (      )

## B Answer the following questions:

3. What were Asser's parents doing in the park?
▶ ................................................................ .
4. What was wrong with the old playground?
▶ ................................................................ .

## 6 Choose the correct answer: (6Ms)

1. The (teacher - designer - sculptor - vet) is a person who makes sculptures.
2. We (going - go - goes - to go) to school from Sunday to Thursday.
3. Green roofs clean and cool the (soil - air - street - building).
4. I don't have a bike. I (often - always - never - usually) cycle to school.
5. Nada goes home (before - after - at - through) school.
6. The school (shoes - bag - uniform - bus) is clothes that are the same for every student.

## 7 Order the words to make a correct sentence: (2Ms)

1. is - be - There - going to - next week - a concert.
▶ ................................................................ .
2. cats - the vet - How often - go - to - should?
▶ ................................................................ ?

## 8 Write a paragraph of (60) words using the following elements: (4Ms)

*"Your favorite pet"*

Ideas to help you:
- What's it?
- Why do you choose it?
- How do you care for it?

.................................................................................................

.................................................................................................

.................................................................................................

.................................................................................................

.................................................................................................

# Revision Test 4

Total ___ / 30

نصا الاستماع موجودان آخر الكتاب.

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. Turtles like to eat (roses - flowers - carrot - trees) and plants.
2. Turtles need clean (ground - space - soil - room) to dig in.
3. Turtles sometimes need a heat lamp to keep them nice and (cool - cold - warm - hot).
4. Turtles like sleeping in a (dangerous - safe - far - near), dark place.

## 2 Listen and answer the questions: (2Ms)

1. How many hours does a Bill robot work? ▶ ............................................ .
2. What do the Bill robots do? ▶ ............................................ .

## 3 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue: (4Ms)

**Esraa** : What is the best kitchen ① ........................ in your opinion?

**Aya** : I think the ② ..........................! If it's hot tomorrow, I'll make a smoothie with fruit and ice!

**Esraa** : Who ③ .................................... the blender?

**Aya** : A Polish-American man called Stephen Poplawski invented the blender in 1922.

**Esraa** : What are blenders made of?

**Aya** : Blenders are made of plastic, glass and ④ ....................................?

## 4 Read the following text and then answer the questions below: (4Ms)

My friend Fawzi always says that he knows everything. Whenever a name is said, he says he knows the person very well. I believed him until one day I found that he was a big liar. One day, he visited me when I was with my uncle Mr Ali Rady, who is a famous writer. Before I introduced him to my uncle, his eyes fell on one of my uncle's novels which was on the table. At once, he said that he knew the writer of the novel very well and that he was one of his best friends. He also said Mr Ali never wrote a book before discussing its idea with him. At last my uncle introduced himself to my friend who was very ashamed and left the place without saying a word.

### A Choose the correct answer:

1. Mr Ali writes (films - reports - songs - novels).
2. The underlined word "him" refers to (the writer - Mr Ali - Fawzi - uncle).

### B Answer these questions:

3. How did the writer find out that his friend was a liar?
   ▶ ............................................................................................................ .
4. What have you learned from this story?
   ▶ ............................................................................................................ .

## The Reader - Hassan Fathy: A biography

## 5 A- Read and write T (True) or F (False): (4Ms)

1. Hassan built attractive houses using high-cost materials. (   )
2. Traditional Egyptian homes had domed roofs and mud bricks. (   )

## B Answer the following questions:

3. Which countries can you see Hassan Fathy's buildings in?
4. What awards did Hassan Fathy receive?

## 6 Choose the correct answer: (6Ms)

1. Anish Kapoor is a (tailor - sailor - singer - sculptor). He made amazing sculptures.
2. I think we need to clean (over - in - up - on) the kitchen.
3. A (subject - mobile - timetable - class) is a schedule with the times of all your school classes on it.
4. Cats need attention. This means (this - that - these - those) they need their owners to be interested in them.
5. Some people have (electricity - electric - interactive - power) cars.
6. People (aren't - won't - weren't - didn't) get sick if they have a vaccine.

## 7 Order the words to make a correct sentence: (2Ms)

1. the vet - to - go - should - every year - Cats.
▶ ........................................................................................ .
2. do - you - How - at - communicate - school?
▶ ........................................................................................ ?

## 8 Write an email to your friend Rana: (4Ms)

Tell her about your favorite school subjects, your friends and what you hope to be in the future. Your email address is sama@hotmail.com. Your friend's email address is rana@gmail.com.

........................................................................................................................
........................................................................................................................
........................................................................................................................
........................................................................................................................
........................................................................................................................






## Revision Test 5

نصا الاستماع موجودان آخر الكتاب.

### 1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (4Ms)



1. Some classes have their lessons in a (park - garden - zoo - class) on the roof of the school.
2. Green roofs are gardens on the (bottom - middle - top - end) of a building.
3. Green roofs bring nature into the (town - city - country - school).
4. Green roofs are great for the (nature - school - class - environment).

### 2 Listen and answer the questions: (2Ms)



1. How is tennis useful? ▶ ..........................................................
2. Where can you play tennis? ▶ ..........................................................

### 3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box: (4Ms)

**claws - vaccinations - docter - vet - stroke**

Give your cat lots of attention so it feels safe. You should ① .................... it. A cat needs a scratch post to sharpen it's ② .................... on. Cats should go to the ③ .................... once a year for ④ .................... . These stop them from getting sick.

### 4 Read the following text and then answer the questions below: (4Ms)

There are many different sports. Some of them are played on land like volleyball and others are played in water like swimming. There are some dangerous sports like motor racing and parachuting which is played in the air.
There are sports which are done by two persons like judo and others which are played by two teams like basketball. The most popular sport in the world is football. The players have to practice hard to win.



## A Choose the correct answer:

1. The most popular sport is (volleyball – football – tennis – basketball).
2. (Judo – handball – Parachuting – Swimming) is a water sport.

## B Answer these questions:

3. Which sports are dangerous?
   ▶ .......................................................................................... .
4. How can the players win?
   ▶ .......................................................................................... .

## The Reader - A wonderful surprise

## 5 A- Read and write T (True) or F (False): (4Ms)

1. Asser enjoyed showing Mayar around the sensory garden. (        )
2. It's difficult for people in wheelchairs to enjoy in the garden.(        )

## B Answer the following questions:

3. What's a sensory garden?
   ▶ .......................................................................................... .
4. Which things in the sensory garden can people touch?
   ▶ .......................................................................................... .

## 6 Choose the correct answer: (6Ms)

1. The blender is the best kitchen (medicine - appliance - vaccine - blade).
2. Ashraf asked what (are they - they are - they were - were they) going to do.
3. A (doctor - teacher - vet - hunter) catches or kills wild animals.
4. January is often (colder - the coldest - cold - coldest) month of the year in Egypt.
5. I'm (worried - keen - interested - sad) on walking with my family and friends.
6. Rana asked (how - what - if - where) I thought they were happy.

## 7 Order the words to make a correct sentence: (2Ms)

1. steel - stainless - does - Kapoor - Why - use?
   ▶ .................................................................... ?
2. for - are - great - the - environment - roofs - Green.
   ▶ .................................................................... .

## 8 Write a paragraph of (60) words using the following elements: (4Ms)

*"The robots"*

▶ Ideas to help you: future - life - humans - easy lives - 24 hours - chores

....................................................................
....................................................................
....................................................................
....................................................................
....................................................................

# Revision Test 6

Total
30

نصا الاستماع موجودان آخر الكتاب.

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. School trips are (funny - boring - exciting - dull) learning experiences.
2. We can learn a lot by (watching - visiting - learning - studying) new places.
3. School trips are a very important part of our (industry - farming - fishing - education).
4. We should try to go on one school trip every (day - week - month - year).

## 2 Listen and answer the questions: (2Ms)

1. What is your favorite activity? ▶ ................................................ .
2. How do you feel when you're painting? ▶ ................................................ .

## 3 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue: (4Ms)

Shady : Is electricity important?
Ramy : Yes, it is. We can't use ① .............................. without electricity.
Shady : What about transportation?
Ramy : Bus stations and airports all ② .............................. electricity.
Shady : What about lighting?
Ramy : We don't like ③ .............................. . So we need lighting in the evening.
Shady : Is it important in our free time?
Ramy : Yes, it is. I love playing video ④ .............................. with my brother.

## 4 Read the following text and then answer the questions below: (4Ms)

Basim is twelve years old. He is very interested in reading. He goes to the school library every day. Basim thinks that a good book is your best friend because it is always useful and can go with you everywhere as it is easy to carry. Basim saves money to buy new books, he also borrows some books from his friends. Basim reads different kinds of books in order not to be bored. He always tells his two sisters and friends that reading makes them think better.

### A Choose the correct answer:

1. Basim's father has (two - three - four - five) children.
2. Books are (easy - difficult - heavy - boring) to carry.

### B Answer these questions:

3. How does Basim get new books?
4. What does Basim tell his sisters and friends about reading?

## The Reader - A Wonderful Surprise

### 5 A- Read and write T (True) or F (False): (4Ms)

1. There aren't any villas in New Baris now. ( )
2. Hassan Fathy wanted to give the farmers a fantastic place to live. ( )

### B Answer the following questions:

3. What did the builders find in the desert? ▶ .......................................... .
4. Why did Hassan Fathy build a courtyard? ▶ .......................................... .

### 6 Choose the correct answer: (6Ms)

1. I can (find - finding - finds - found) things for outdoor art when I go for a walk.
2. Mariam loves (comic books - push-ups - cartoons - chess). She likes reading.
3. The (smoothie - vaccine - milkshake - appliance) is a type of medicine that stops you getting ill.
4. Hatem (often cycle - is often cycling - cycles often - often cycles) to school.
5. My mom is the (good - better - best - bad) cook in the world.
6. He asked (why you are - why were you - why you were) late.

### 7 Order the words to make a correct sentence: (2Ms)

1. going - I'm - to - piano - the - play. ▶ .......................................... .
2. boy - is - your - little - How - old? ▶ .......................................... ?

### 8 Write an email to your new friend Saad: (4Ms)

Tell him about your personal profile. Your email address is ali@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is saad@gmail.com.

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

# Part 4



# Listening Scripts

Part 3

# Listening Script

نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بالكتاب الأساسي.




## Test 1

1- There is a big art exhibition in the city museum today. You can see many creative activities there. People can try junk modeling and build a rocket or a car. They also can use clay to make a bowl or a house. They can use recycled cloth to design their own clothes. They can use beads to make beautiful jewelry like necklaces or bracelets.

Question 1

## Test 1

2- Anish Kapoor is a sculptor. He was born in India in 1945. He makes very large pieces of art for public places. Tall Tree and the Eye is a famous sculpture by him. It stands outside the Guggenheim Museum in Bilbao, Spain.

Question 2




## Test 2

My name is Selim. My father bought a new apartment last month. We moved into it last week. I was so happy because I had a new bedroom. My bedroom is very comfortable and light. I have a long desk for my PC to do my homework in the bedroom. I can play computer games and watch cartoons in my bedroom. I also love swapping comic books and reading them in bed.

Question 1

## Test 2

Stephen Poplawski invented the blender in 1922. He put a sharp blade in the bottom of a tall glass. When the blade turns, it chops the food. He added a small motor. The motor turned the blade, which blended the food together. He used his new invention to make milkshakes.

Question 2




## Test 1

In Egypt, some classes have their lessons in a garden on the roof of the school! The Shagara at School project designs gardens and green roofs for schools in Egypt. Green roofs are gardens on the top of a building. They bring nature into the city. They also clean and cool the air. That means that they are great for the environment.

Question 1

## Test 1

I'm Hamdy. I like playing tennis with my friends. Tennis is a great sport for me. It makes me healthy and happy. My friends and I go to the club to play tennis every weekend. If you play sports, you will have a healthy body and new friends.

Question 2




## Test 2

My name is Asser. I'm in primary six. I love my friends at school very much. We are all different because our families are different. I'm tall with brown eyes. Seleem is short with green eyes. He wears glasses to see well. Injy wears braces to help her teeth get better. Amal uses a wheelchair because she can't walk well.

Question 1



## Test 2

David Aguilar Amphoux was born with a creative spirit. The pectoral muscle and his right arm were not developed. He won the Guinness World Record for being the first person to self-build his own fully functioning prosthetic arm. David's prosthetic arm is made of special bricks with plastic. David's dad wrote an educational comic about him. He portrayed David as a superhero who fights against bullying.

Question 2



(نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بامتحانات الملحق.)



Unit 1 Listening Script

Test 1

There are different competitions from time to time. Nowadays, there is a competition to show how creative children are! They want children between the ages of five and fifteen to send their creative works. Their works will appear in a big art exhibition in the city museum. There are so many different ways children can express themselves. They could send a painting, a photo, a poem, a story or any other creative work.

Question 1



Test 1

Hi! I'm Fatma. Yesterday I went to my friend Nour's birthday party. It was in a park in the open air at night. Many friends came to celebrate with us. That night was very dark. Rockets of fireworks shot up into the air. Colors burned brilliantly against the black sky. We were very happy. We ate, drank and played games. It was a day to remember.

Question 2



Unit 2 Listening Script

Test 2

know that turtles like to eat flowers and plants? You can also buy special turtle food. Turtles sometimes need a heat lamp. This is a special light to keep the turtle nice and warm. Turtles like sleeping in a safe, dark place where the temperature doesn't change.

Question 1



Test 2

Tamer and Noha visited their grandparent's old house with their parents last week. Noha was playing with their kitten. Suddenly, the kitten jumped off the chair and ran through a small hole in the wall. Noha tried to get her, but she found some paper. It was a massage in a child's writing. Noha felt very curious.



Question 2




### Test 3

Sagda is in Grade 6. She goes to school from Sunday to Thursday. Sagda likes ICT. She likes to use computers. School starts at 8 am and finishes at 3 pm. She has an hour break for lunch. She usually brings her lunch from home.

Question 1

### Test 3

I'm Hamdy. I like playing tennis with my friends. Tennis is a great sport for me. It makes me healthy and happy. My friends and I go to the club to play tennis every weekend. If you play sports, you will have a healthy body and new friends.

Question 2




### Test 4

We are not the same, every one is different. Some of us are good at art, and others are good at music. My friend Aser is tall, but I'm very short. I have straight hair and brown eyes, but Yara has curly hair and blue eyes. It's good that everyone is different.

Question 1

### Test 4

Mr. Kamal asked us what ways we communicate with each other. We thought there were lots of ways. I said that talking was a way of communicating. Younis said that using expressions, like smiling, was another. Adam said that writing messages on his phone was his favorite way to communicate.

Question 2

## Revision

### Test 1

Anish Kapoor is a sculptor. He was born in India in 1954. He can make sculptures that will stay in place for a long time. Kapoor uses stainless steel in Tall Tree and the Eye sculpture because it is a very strong material.

Question 1



Test 1

It's good that everyone is different. We don't look the same because our families are different. People shouldn't be unkind to someone because they're different. Our school is for everyone.

Question 2




Test

Polish-American man called Stephen Poplawski invented the blender in 1922. He put a sharp blade in the bottom of a tall glass. When the blade turns, it chops the food. He added a small motor. He used his new invention to make milkshakes.

Question 1

Test 2

I'm Reem. We moved into a new apartment a month ago. I'm so happy because I have a new bedroom. It's a very light and comfortable room.

Question 2




Test

Give your cat lots of attention so it feels safe. Cats like a warm comfortable bed, but sometimes they just sleep on the couch. They need to sleep 15 hours every day. They shouldn't have much milk to drink. Water is better.

Question 1

Test 3

My name is Sarah. I think electricity is most useful in our free time. I love my laptop. I do my homework on it, then I play video games with my brother Adel.

Question 2




Test

Turtles like to eat flowers and plants. They need clean soil to dig in, too. They sometimes need a heat lamp. This is a special light to keep the turtle nice and warm. They like sleeping in a safe, dark place where the temperature doesn't change.

Question 1



Test 4

It's the year 2089, and life on Earth is sweet! Humans have easy lives because every family has a Bill robot which works 24 hours a day for them. The Bill robots do all their chores.

Question 2




Test 5

In Egypt, some classes have their lessons in a garden on the roof of the school. Green roofs are gardens on the top of a building. They bring nature into the city. They also clean and cool the air. That means they are great for environment.

Question 1

Test 5

Doing sports is very important for you body. One of these exciting sports is tennis. It makes you healthy and happy! It's fun when you meet your friends and play it in the club.

Question 2




Test 6

School trips are exciting learning experiences. We can learn a lot by visiting new places. School trips are often more interesting than only reading about things in books or watching videos. School trips are a very important part of our education. I think we should try to go on one school trip every year.

Question 1

Test 6

Everyone of us has some activities to do. My favorite activity is painting. I always feel happy when I'm painting. If I'm sad, I paint. Then I feel better.

Question 2

# Part 4



# Answer Key



# Part 1 The Set Book

## Unit (1)

### Lesson (1)

**1 Read and complete the text:**
(1) leaves (2) beads (3) cardboard
(4) clay (5) computer (6) cloth

**2 Supply the missing parts:**
(1) competition (2) exhibition
(3) modeling (4) Why

**3 Read the text and answer:**
(A) 1- creative 2- museum
(B) 3- They want children between the ages of five and fifteen.
4- They could send a painting, a photo, a poem, a story or any other creative work.

**4 Order the words:**
1- You could use a computer to make an animation.
2- You could use plastic bottles or cardboard in junk modeling.
3- You can use leaves or shells in outdoor art.
4- What can you use to make a collage?
5- How about designing and making your own clothes?
6- Your work will appear in a big art exhibition.
7- You can use recycled cloth to save money.
8- How do you like to express yourself?

**5 Write an email:**
From: yasmine@gmail.com
To: nada@hotmail.com
Subject: The creative activities I do
Hi Nada!
I'm really creative! I can do all sorts of things, like junk modeling, pottery, designing clothes, and making collages.
For junk modeling, I make new things out of old things. I've made a robot out of old cardboard boxes, a castle out of milk cartons, and a car out of plastic bottles.
For pottery, I use clay to make all sorts of shapes and objects. I've made bowls, cups and vases.
I also love to design clothes. I come up with all sorts of ideas for new outfits, and sometimes I even sew them myself.
What are your favorite creative activities؟
Write back soon!
Love,
Yasmine

### Lesson (2)

**1 Read and complete the text:**
(1) make (2) mix (3) clean (4) leave (5) use

**2 Supply the missing parts:**
(1) painting (2) hands
(3) clay (4) disappears

**3 Choose the correct answer:**
1- feel 2- find 3- make
4- make 5- set 6- take
7- make 8- can 9- clean
10- dries 11- don't make 12- is
13- paints 14- does 15- starts
16- come 17- feel 18- get 19- can't
20- are 21- disappears 22- rains

**4 Order the words:**
1- How does Noha feel when she's painting?
2- I prefer making things with my hands.
3- I like sculpture and junk modeling.
4- I always feel happy when I'm painting.
5- Have you heard about this competition, Hesham?
6- What are you going to make?
7- My favorite activity is painting.
8- Why doesn't Noha like pottery?
9- The paint disappears when I wash my hands!
10- What do you do if you feel sad?

### Lesson (3)

**1 Read and complete the text:**
(1) poem (2) imagine
(3) fireworks (4) jewels

**2 Choose the correct answer:**
1- poet 2- verse 3- rhyme
4- shoot 5- jewels 6- concert
7- off 8- hold 9- dark 10- fireworks

**3 Read the text and answer:**
1- dark 2- Fireworks
3- It was in a park in the open air.
4- They stood together in the cold, black night, and they shouted and cheered.

### 4 Order the words:
1- The lights make the sky as bright as day.
2- How many lines are in each verse?
3- Rockets shoot up into the air.
4- Can you find any rhyming words?
5- The colors in the sky look like jewels.

### 5 Write a paragraph of (60) words:
"A party that I liked a lot"
I went to a party that I liked a lot! It was my friend Ali's birthday, and it was yesterday in the park in the open air. My friends and I played games like tag and hide-and-seek. We also had a picnic with sandwiches, chips, and juice boxes. I liked the party because I got to run and play outside with my friends. We laughed a lot and had so much fun together. The weather was sunny, and everyone was happy. It was the best party ever!

## Lesson (4)

### 1 Read and complete the text:
(1) sculptor (2) shapes
(3) materials (4) art

### 2 Supply the missing parts:
(1) sculptor (2) materials
(3) stainless (4) damage

### 3 Choose the correct answer:
1- bubble 2- sphere 3- irregular
4- reflects 5- material 6- sculptor
7- material 8- sphere 9- shiny
10- reflect 11- bubbles 12- sculptor
13- floats 14- material

### 4 Read the text and answer:
1- UK 2- artist
3- He was 19 years old.
4- Because he understands math well, and he also understands materials.

### 5 Order the words:
1- Why does Kapoor use stainless steel?
2- Kapoor has made many famous sculptures.
3- Stainless steel is very shiny.
4- This sculpture is about 13 meters tall.
5- Where is Anish Kapoor from?
6- The spheres are arranged in an irregular pattern.
7- Kapoor is a great artist.
8- Where did Kapoor study art?

## Lesson (5)

### 1 Supply the missing parts:
(1) talented (2) surprised
(3) problem (4) practicing

### 2 Choose the correct answer:
1- musician 2- award 3- cello
4- stage 5- talented 6- theater
7- actors 8- performing
9- instruments 10- musician

### 3 Choose the correct answer:
1- before 2- on 3- under
4- on 5- in 6- after
7- through 8- behind 9- in
10- for 11- for 12- into

### 4 Order the words:
1- Sayed Darwish was a famous Egyptian musician.
2- What do you do on a sunny day?
3- What does Mazen hope to do one day?
4- The concert was amazing!
5- What is Mazen doing?
6- I put my guitar somewhere.
7- I'm always tired after a concert!
8- I couldn't find my guitar!
9- There is going to be a concert next week.
10- My friend saw the guitar behind the door.

### 5 Write a paragraph of (60) words:
"What do I always do after school?"
When I come home from school, the first thing I do is have lunch. I love having some tea after lunch. After that, I usually do my homework. It can be a little boring, but I know it's important. Once I finish my homework, I like to play outside with my friends. We ride bikes, play football, or just run around. It's so much fun. In the evening, I have dinner with my family, then I go to bed at 9:30.

## Lesson (6)

### 1 Read and complete the text:
(1) pottery (2) clay
(3) bowl (4) decorated

### 2 Supply the missing parts:
(1) project (2) teacher
(3) wheel (4) mom

**3 Order the words:**
1- I wanted to make a bowl.
2- We put on our aprons over clothes.
3-The kiln makes the clay hard and strong.
4- We waited for the bowl to be cool.
5-I used special paint to decorate my bowl.
6- I really enjoyed making my bowl!
7- The children chose what to make.
8- Amal made circles on her bowl.

**4 Read the text and answer:**
1- pottery 2- bowl 3- He showed them how to use a pottery wheel.
4- It's a special oven which gets very hot. It makes the clay hard and strong.

**5 Write a paragraph of (60) words:**
"A creative project I have done at school"
When my teacher told us that we were going to do a creative project, I was so excited! He told us that we were going to do a pottery project. When we put on our aprons and went to the pottery wheel, I was so excited! I had never used a pottery wheel before, and I couldn't wait to make a vase. I put a lump of clay on the pottery wheel. I used my hands to shape the clay into a vase. It was hard work, but it was also really fun. When I finished, I took my vase to the kiln. The kiln makes the clay hard and strong. When I got my vase back, I was so proud of it!

## Lesson (7)

**1 Supply the missing parts:**
(1) show (2) website
(3) photography (4) edit

**2 Choose the correct answer:**
1- advertisement 2- choir 3- costumes
4- edit 5- exhibition 6- Photography
7- play 8- audience

**3 Read the text and answer:**
1- edit 2- website
3- They went to a photography exhibition.
4- He bought some photography books.

**4 Order the words:**
1- What was Magdy's job at the show?
2- I'm going to play the piano.
3- The choir is going to sing beautiful songs.
4- I've written a funny play!
5- I can't play an instrument.
6- Dad has a good camera.
7-Are you studying photography at school?
8- I don't like being on stage.
9- I can edit the photos for our school website.
10- I don't like singing or acting.
11- You're going to be a great photographer.
12- Magdy borrowed his dad's camera.

**5 Write an email:**
From: ayman@school.net
To: ramez@yahoo.com
Subject: My favorite hobbies
Dear Ramez,
How are you? I'm writing to tell you about my favorite hobbies.
My favorite hobby is playing football. I play football every day after school, from 3:00 to 4:00 PM. I love playing soccer because it's a fun and active sport. I also love being on a team and working together with my teammates to win.
My other favorite hobby is reading. I read every night before bed. I love reading because it takes me to different worlds and introduces me to new characters. I also love learning new things from the books I read.
I also like to play video games, but I only play them on weekends. I'm starting to get interested in other hobbies, like photography and playing handball.
What are your favorite hobbies?
Talk to you soon,
Ayman

## Unit (1) Test (1)

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer:**
1- exhibition 2- modeling
3- cloth 4- jewelry

**2 Listen and answer the questions:**
1- Anish Kapoor is a sculptor.
2- It stands outside the Guggenheim Museum Bilbao, Spain.

**3 Supply the missing parts:**
1- competition 2- creative
3- painting 4- modeling

**4 Read the text and answer:**
1- hospitals  2- computers
3- Factories use computers in robots that can do dirty and dangerous work.
4- Secretaries use them in offices to write letters.

**6 Choose the correct answer:**
1- computer  2- find  3- use
4- hear  5- beads  6- takes

**7 Order the words:**
1- Do you like getting your hands messy?
2- Stainless steel is good for outdoor sculptures.

**8 Write a paragraph of (60) words:**
"My school day"

I get up early in the morning, then I wash and have breakfast. After that, I take the bus to school. At school, I study different subjects, like math, science, English, and history. I also have a break and lunch with my friends. In the afternoon, I go to the library to read books or do my homework. Then I take the bus home. I love my school day! I learn new things, make new friends, and have fun.

# Unit (2)

## Lesson (1)

**1 Read and complete the text:**
(1) computer  (2) game
(3) cartoons  (4) swapping

**2 Supply the missing parts:**
(1) apartment  (2) comfortable
(3) share  (4) noise

**3 Read and complete the text:**
(1) violin  (2) practice
(3) sporty  (4) push-ups

**4 Choose the correct answer:**
1- watch cartoons  2- swap comic books
3- play the violin  4- do push-ups
5- play chess  6- sporty  7- board
8- violin  9- comic books  10- cartoons
11- push-ups  12- chess  13- watch
14- does  15- swap  16- plays

**5 Order the words:**
1- We moved into a new apartment.
2- Sherif is an amazing chess player.
3- Maged and I have many of the same friends.
4- What do you like about your bedroom?
5- We watch cartoons with our friends.
6- I love swapping comic books.
7- My brother does push-ups in our room.
8- Chess is quite difficult for me.
9- Maged and I like board games.
10- What do you do in your bedroom?

**6 Write an email:**
From: gameela@yahoo.com
To: merna@gmail.com
Subject: Our new apartment and my new room
Dear Merna,
Guess what? We moved into a new apartment! I'm so excited, especially because I have a new bedroom. It's bigger than my old one, and it has a big window with a view of the park. I can't wait to spend all my time there playing and reading.
I'm still getting used to the new place, but I'm really happy. My new neighborhood is great, and I've already made a few new friends. I can't wait to show you my new bedroom sometime soon.
How are things going with you? What's new?
See you soon,
Gameela

## Lesson (2)

**1 Read and complete the text:**
(1) appliance  (2) make
(3) making  (4) blade

**2 Supply the missing parts:**
1- smoothie  2- milkshakes
3- blender  4- won't

**3 Read and complete the text:**
1- heat  2- medicine  3- vaccine  4- won't

**4 Choose the correct answer:**
1- milkshake  2- motor  3- invention
4- smoothie  5- appliance  6- vaccine
7- invention  8- blade  9- motor
10- heat  11- vaccine  12- appliance

### 5 Choose the correct answer:

1- gets 2- will be 3- come
4- put 5- may 6- make
7- won't 8- arrive 9- may
10- if 11- have 12- use 13- is
14- wants 15- doesn't go 16- won't come

### 6 Read the text and answer:

1- Polish-American 2- bottom
3- To turn the blade.
4- There are blenders made of plastic, glass, and metal. Some blenders can heat food, too!

### 7 Order the words:

1-Which is your favorite kitchen appliance?
2- Blenders are useful in medicine.
3- Has the blender changed over the years?
4- Dr Jonas was a famous scientist.
5- What do you use the blender for?
6- Some blenders can heat food!
7- Do you have a blender at home?
8- Dr Jonas used a blender to make a vaccine.

## Lesson (3)

### 1 Read and complete the text:

(1) opinion (2) games
(3) think (4) electricity

### 2 Supply the missing parts:

1- outage 2- interactive
3- cable 4- power

### 3 Read and complete the text:

1- lighting 2- transportation
3- electric 4- stations

### 4 Choose the correct answer:

1- opinion 2- think 3- lights
4- electricity 5- electric 6- power
7- transportation 8- socket
9- interactive 10- kettle

### 5 Order the words:

1- Why is electricity important?
2- I play video games with my brother.
3- What did Miss Amira do?
4- What is a power outage?
5- We need lights in the evening.
6- What things can't we do without electricity?
7- Some people have electric cars.
8- Bus stations and airports need electricity.

### 6 Write a paragraph of (60) words:

"How is electricity important?"

I think that electricity is very important. It helps us use electric appliances to cook our favorite foods and make drinks. I love that I can use my computer to learn new things, play games and watch videos. Electricity is also important for transportation. Bus stations and airports need electricity to give buses and airplanes power. This means that electricity helps people travel to new places. I'm so glad that we have electricity. It makes my life so much easier and more fun.

## Lesson (4)

### 1 Read and complete the text:

(1) Humans (2) chores
(3) terrible (4) broke

### 2 Supply the missing parts:

1- robots 2- chores
3- ironing 4- fixing

### 3 Read and complete the text:

1- ironing 2- making
3- fixing 4- shocked

### 4 Choose the correct answer:

1- Luckily 2- programmed 3- make
4- fix 5- microwave 6- fill
7- milkshake 8- iron 9- change 10- heat

### 5 Order the words:

1- What does a Bill do?
2- The Bills were important to the people.
3- All the Bills suddenly broke down.
4- Life on Earth is sweet!
5- The Bill robots do all the chores.
6- I programmed Bill to fix my car.
7- What am I going to do?
8- Mom learned how to use the microwave.

### 6 Write an email:

From: omnia@school.net
To: hagar@yahoo.com
Subject: An interesting story I read
Hi Hagar,
How are things with you? I hope you're fine.
I have read a story called "The Day The Bills Broke Down", and I want to tell you about it. The robots, called Bills, were

helping people with all their chores. One day, they broke down, and people were very shocked. People started trying to learn things from videos. They learned how to use a blender and had milkshakes. Mom learned how to use the microwave so they could heat some food. Luckily, a computer engineer fixed the problem, and all the Bills started working again.
Omnia

## Lesson (5)

**1 Supply the missing parts:**
(1) away (2) pick (3) hang (4) tidy

**2 Choose the correct answer:**
1- water 2- clothes 3- books 4- kitchen
5- room 6- garbage 7- dishes

**3 Choose the correct answer:**
1- up 2- up 3- away 4- up
5- out 6- up 7- up 8- hang
9- pick 10- clean 11- put 12- tidy
13- mop 14- put

**4 Order the words:**
1- We need to clean up the kitchen.
2- We have to put out the garbage.
3- Our dining table is really messy.
4- The kitchen floor is dirty.
5- The garbage can is full.
6- There are toys on the floor.
7- I'll put out the garbage.
8- I always tidy up my room on weekends.
9- Can you put away the dishes?
10- There is juice on the floor.

**5 Write an email:**
From: marwa@gmail.com
To: salma@yahoo.com
Subject: The chores we do on the weekend
Hi Salma،
I hope this email finds you well! I wanted to tell you about the chores my family and I do every weekend.
First, we mop up the water. Sometimes, when we take a bath or wash dishes, water spills on the floor. So, we use a mop to clean it up. Next, we hang up the clothes. My mom washes our clothes in the washing machine, and then we hang them outside to dry. Then we hang them in the closet. After that, we clean up the kitchen. We wash the dishes and put them away. Then, we tidy up our rooms. We also have to put out the garbage. My dad takes out the trash bags and I help him carry them to the bins outside.
I would love to hear about the chores you and your family do too!
Take care and have a fantastic week!
Marwa

## Lesson (6)

**1 Read and complete the text:**
(1) Turtles (2) space (3) dig (4) lamp

**2 Supply the missing parts:**
1- attention 2- sharpen
3- vet 4- vaccinations

**3 Read and complete the text:**
1- This 2- sharpen
3- collar 4- vaccinations

**4 Choose the correct answer:**
1- This is 2- This means that
3- This means that 4- This is
5- This is 6- This means that

**5 Order the words:**
1- Where do turtles sleep?
2- What equipment does a cat need?
3- Cats should go to the vet every year.
4- Cats like a warm, comfortable bed.
5- A cat needs a scratch post.
6- Cats like to play with toys.
7- How often should cats go to the vet?
8- Turtles like to eat flowers and plants.
9- What do turtles eat?
10- What equipment do turtles need?

**6 Write a paragraph of (60) words:**
"Caring for your turtles"
Turtles are super cool! I learned that they eat flowers and plants, so if you have a pet turtle, you need to make sure they have a lot of space to move around and explore. They also need clean soil to dig in. Turtles sometimes need a heat lamp to keep them nice and warm. When it's time to sleep, they like to find a safe and quiet place. Taking care of a turtle sounds like a big responsibility, but I think it would be so much fun!

## Lesson (7)

**1 Read and complete the text:**
(1) vacation (2) bricks
(3) hole (4) curious

**2 Choose the correct answer:**
1- curious 2- brick 3- shocked
4- great-grandmother 5- spare
6- bricks 7- curious 8- shocked
9- spare 10- memories
11- grow up 12- childhood

**3 Order the words:**
1- What is the story of the message?
2- Sameh felt very curious.
3- The doll was beautiful.
4- Do you think they were happy?
5- There was a birthday card.
6- Sameh found a message in the wall.

**6 Write a paragraph of (60) words:**
"The history of your family home"

My family home has a really interesting history! It's super old - even older than my grandparents. I'm not exactly sure how old it is, but I think it's been around for many, many years. Lots of different people have lived in our home before us. My granddad told me that it used to belong to his grandparents. Over time, our home has changed a lot. My parents have added new rooms and painted the walls in fun colors. We also have modern appliances now, like a nice oven and a big TV. It's really cool to think about all the memories and stories that have happened in our family home throughout the years. I love living here and being a part of its history!

## Unit (2) Test (2)

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer:**
1- apartment 2- week
3- bedroom 4- swapping

**2 Listen and answer the questions:**
1- He invented the blender.
2- He used his new invention to make milkshakes.

**3 Supply the missing parts:**
1- lighting 2- appliances
3- electricity 4- electric

**4 Read the text and answer:**
(A) 1- mother 2- 100 years
(B) 3- It's the electric light bulb.
4- stupid - switch on

**6 Choose the correct answer:**
1- gets 2- Vaccine 3- out
4- violin 5- that 6- may catch

**7 Order the words:**
1- The robots broke down yesterday.
2- Could you mop up the juice, please?

**8 Write an email:**
From: jana@hotmail.com
To: ola@gmail.com
Subject: What I have seen at the pet shop
Hi Ola،
You won't believe what I saw at the pet shop today! They had so many cute pets! The seller told me some cool things about taking care of pets. He said that pets need love, food, and a safe home. For dogs, they need walks and playtime. Cats need scratching posts. And for fish, they need a clean tank and the right food. I'm excited about getting a pet someday!
Take care,
Jana

# Unit (3)

## Lesson (1)

**1 Read and complete the text:**
(1) tents (2) nomadic
(3) sleds (4) reindeer

**2 Supply the missing parts:**
1- roofs 2- What
3- environment 4- nature

**3 Read and complete the text:**
1- nomadic 2- subjects
3- skills 4- timetable

**4 Read and complete the text:**
1- roofs 2- Green
3- nature 4- environment

**5 Choose the correct answer:**
1- mobile 2- flexible 3- timetable
4- boarding 5- subject 6- subjects
7- flexible 8- mobile 9- boarding
10- sleds

**6 Read the text and answer:**

1- amazing 2- shade
3- In 2017, classes at one school in Egypt started a new project. They wanted to go to their green roofs for lessons.
4- Green outdoor places make us calm and healthy – and that is great for learning.

**7 Order the words:**

1- What is a green roof?
2- What are nomadic people?
3- Would you like to visit Siberia?
4- Green roofs are great for the environment.
5- What is a nomadic school?
6- How do the children get an education?
7- Nomadic people don't live in one place.
8- Nomadic people look after reindeer.
9- Why are the children happy at the nomadic school?
10- How can roof gardens help students in city schools?

## Lesson (2)

**1 Read and complete the text:**

(1) uniform (2) neat
(3) sometimes (4) cafeteria

**2 Supply the missing parts:**

1- neat 2- uniform
3- walk 4- cafeteria

**3 Choose the correct answer:**

1- ICT 2- neat 3- uniform
4- cafeteria 5- ICT 6- neat
7- uniform 8- neat 9- cafeteria
10- grade

**4 Choose the correct answer:**

1- never 2- always 3- sometimes
4- usually 5- often 6- go
7- starts 8- have 9- often walk
10- go 11- usually bring 12- cycles
13- sometimes brings 14- often walks
15- is sometimes 16- are always
17- am never 18- often walks
19- always gets 20- does
21- sometimes visit 22- never walks

**5 Order the words:**

1- I'm in Grade 6.
2- How does Aban go to school?
3- I go to middle school.
4- How many days does Aban study every week?
5- We go to school from Sunday to Thursday.
6- I sometimes get the bus with my friends.
7- We have an hour for lunch.
8- I usually bring lunch from home.
9- How does Lilly go to school?
10- I tidy up my desk to keep it neat.

**6 Write a paragraph of (60) words:**
"My school week"

My school day is too much fun! First, I wake up early and have breakfast with my family. Then, I wear my school uniform and catch the school bus. At school, I have different classes like math, science, and art. I love the break because I get to play with my friends and run around outside. After lunch, we have English class, and I have fun during it. Finally, the bell rings, and I go home, excited for another awesome day tomorrow!

## Lesson (3)

**1 Supply the missing parts:**

1- Tennis 2- makes
3- healthy 4- join

**2 Choose the correct answer:**

1- makes 2- me 3- Swimming
4- make 5- make 6- Running
7- me 8- makes 9- me
10- Watching 11- make 12- makes
13- make 14- Eating 15- Listening

**3 Read the text and answer:**

1- Art Club 2- walk
3- They went last week.
4- Their photos were really different.

**4 Order the words:**

1- What are the children doing?
2- Children can shoot goals.
3- Art makes you relaxed and happy.
4- Tennis makes you healthy and happy!
5- Tennis is a great sport.
6- Swimming makes me healthy and strong.
7- My friends make me happy.
8- Running makes me feel healthy.

## Lesson (4)

### 1 Supply the missing parts:
1- City 2- harm
3- passionate 4- electricity

### 2 Read and complete the text:
1- Eco-playground 2- trail
3- grow 4- encourage

### 3 Choose the correct answer:
1- demonstration 2- encourage
3- Eco-playground 4- principal
5- passionate 6- environmentally
7- Open 8- passionate 9- trail
10- Recycling 11- encourage 12- grow

### 4 Order the words:
1- We sort the waste from our classrooms.
2- There is a nature trail around the playground.
3- There is a small car park.
4- What can visitors see in the Recycling Room?
5- Enjoy a delicious lunch in our School Garden.
6- New students are welcome to join us.
7- Where does the school tour start?
8- Where is the nature trail?

### 5 Write a paragraph of (60) words:
"Green buildings"

Green buildings are awesome! They're like nature's best friends. We can help by making more green spaces with growing flowers, fruits and vegetables. Walking or cycling instead of driving is a great way to help the environment. Green buildings are super cool because they're made with recycled materials that don't harm the Earth. They even have solar panels that use the sun's power to make electricity. Let's all work together to make our world greener with amazing green buildings!

## Lesson (5)

### 1 Read and complete the text:
1- storm 2- crash
3- steep 4- broken

### 2 Supply the missing parts:
(1) collapsed (2) said
(3) would (4) repaired

### 3 Read and complete the text:
1- journey 2- bridge
3- said 4- was

### 4 Choose the correct answer:
1- steep 2- a journey 3- repair
4- collapses 5- repair 6- journey
7- bridge 8- storm

### 5 Choose the correct answer:
1- listened 2- was 3- was/could
4- heard 5- had 6- walked
7- would 8- could 9- were/could
10- had 11- was 12- hadn't
13- worked 14- would 15- hadn't
16- was 17- visited 18- hadn't
19- was doing 20- would

### 6 Order the words:
1- When did the bridge collapse?
2- The storm lasted all night.
3- I've just listened to the radio.
4- The bus journey took two hours.
5- They said that the storm would stop soon.
6- Lina and her family walked to the river.
7- What are we going to do?
8- We're building a new bridge.

## Lesson (6)

### 1 Read and complete the text:
(1) In my opinion (2) First of all
(3) In addition (4) Finally (5) To sum up

### 2 Supply the missing parts:
1- opinion 2- First
3- Finally 4- sum

### 3 Read and complete the text:
1- opinion 2- First
3- addition 4- sum

### 4 Choose the correct answer:
1- opinion 2- First 3- addition
4- Finally 5- sum up

### 5 Order the words:
1- Are school trips important?
2- In addition, school trips are often interesting.
3- All children should learn Arabic at school.
4- School clubs are a good way to learn.
5- ICT is the most useful subject.
6- We should learn about the environment at school.

## 6 Write a paragraph of (60) words:

"ICT is the most useful subject."

ICT is the best subject ever! Computers are so useful for everything. They help us with homework, school projects, and lessons. The internet is like a big library with all the information we need. It's like a world language we can understand. With ICT, we can explore and discover amazing things. We can learn new skills and even play games and make animations. ICT makes learning fun and helps us be super smart. It's the most useful subject in the whole world!

## Lesson (7)

### 1 Read and complete the text:

(1) scribe (2) court
(3) palace (4) tablet

### 2 Read and complete the text:

(1) bit (2) screamed
(3) poisonous (4) shook

### 3 Choose the correct answer:

1- tablets 2- papyrus 3- scribe
4- court 5- herbs 6- script
7- tablets 8- screamed
9- papyrus 10- palace

### 4 Order the words:

1- How does Nebsin feel about his future job?
2- What does the doctor put on the bite?
3- Nebsin was writing on his wooden tablet.
4- What advice does the doctor give to Nebsin?
5- Why did you want to be a scribe?
6- What does the snake look like?
7- What does Nebsin think about his brother?
8- How did you learn to be a doctor?

## Unit (3) Test (3)

### 1 Listen and circle the correct answer:

1- green 2- gardens
3- air 4- great

### 2 Listen and answer the questions:

1- It makes you relaxed and happy.
2- You can draw and paint pictures in the art room.

### 3 Supply the missing parts:

1- nomadic 2- tents
3- boarding 4- mobile

### 4 Read the text and answer:

1- students 2- difficult
3- They are always noisy, active and childish.
4- A successful teacher should be patient, hardworking, friendly and helpful.

### 6 Choose the correct answer:

1- cafeteria 2- ICT 3- never
4- makes 5- principal 6- had

### 7 Order the words:

1- School trips are exciting learning experiences.
2- What do you use the computer for?

### 8 Write a paragraph of (60) words:

"The school library"

The school library is such an important place! Reading is very important, and the library has so much information. I love finding books I like there. The librarian is very nice and helps me find good stories. The library is like a magical world full of books. I can borrow them and take them home. I go to the library often because I love reading and exploring new adventures. I can't wait to discover more amazing stories there!

# Unit (4)

## Lesson (1)

### 1 Read and complete the text:

(1) straight (2) braces
(3) wheelchair (4) hearing aid

### 2 Read and complete the text:

1- different 2- sports
3- mean 4- glasses

### 3 Choose the correct answer:

1- straight 2- braces 3- wheelchair
4- hearing aid 5- glasses 6- mean

### 4 Read the text and answer:

1- glasses 2- drama
3- He is great at math. 4- Basketball.

### 5 Order the words:
1- How are we different to each other?
2- Asser is taller than everyone else in the class.
3- We should all help each other at school.
4- We are all equally important.
5- Our school is for everyone.
6- It's good that everyone is different.

### 6 Write a paragraph of (60) words:
"The different people I know"

I know so many different people, and they are all special! I have friends who are funny and neighbors who are nice. My relatives are like a big family tree. Some people are tall, and others are short. They have different eye colors and hair styles. My friend Aya wears a hearing aid, and my friend Sara wears braces. My cousin, Shereif, uses a wheelchair because he can't walk well. They are all kind. Every person is important and brings something amazing to the world!

## Lesson (2)

### 1 Read and complete the text:
(1) asked (2) heard
(3) couldn't (4) if

### 2 Choose the correct answer:
1- what happened 2- if we could
3- how we communicated 4- if I knew
5- if we heard 6- we heard 7- asked
8- had 9- asked 10- could guess
11- how we were 12- if the boy would
13- why I wanted 14- they were
15- Monira was 16- if
17- the house was 18- why you were
19- you were 20- if I could

### 3 Order the words:
1- Can you all see the whiteboard?
2- How do you communicate at school?
3- Do you hear lots of sounds outside?
4- Can you guess what it is?
5- We had lots of ideas.
6- Do you know how to use sign language?

## Lesson (3)

### 1 Read and complete the text:
(1) arm (2) plastic
(3) cheap (4) disability

### 2 Supply the missing parts:
1- person / inventor 2- opinion
3- elbow 4- plans

### 3 Order the words:
1- What do you think about football?
2- In my opinion, he's very clever.
3- What about his plans for the future?
4- I think David's family is interesting.
5- What do you think about David?

### 4 Write an email:
From: amgad@hotmail.com
To: tom@gmail.com
Subject: My family and I
Hi Tom،
I hope you're doing great! I wanted to tell you about me. I have an awesome family with a funny dad, a kind mom, and a cute little sister. My school is cool, and I have nice teachers. My favorite subject is art. I love playing football and drawing. On weekends, I go to the park with my family. What about you? Tell me all about your family, school, and hobbies too!
Best wishes,
Amgad

## Lesson (4)

### 1 Read and complete the text:
1- rainforests 2- advertisement
3- information 4- kindness

### 2 Supply the missing parts:
1- advertisement 2- work
3- pictures 4- information

### 3 Choose the correct answer:
1- ill 2- illness 3- happiness 4- happy
5- agree 6- advertisement 7- kindness
8- information 9- posters 10- groups

### 4 Order the words:
1- Can I work with you?
2- I'd like everyone to work together.
3- I'd love to draw the pictures!
4- These posters are beautiful.
5- Who are you working with in your group?
6- We will make a very good team!
7- Why does Fares talk to Mrs Randa?
8- Fares starts to feel a bit sad.
9- Let's go and talk to Amira.
10- Samer is good at design.

## Lesson (5)

**1 Read and complete the text:**

1- herd 2- leader
3- kindest 4- route

**2 Read and complete the text:**

1- hunters 2- members
3- biggest 4- proudest

**3 Choose the correct answer:**

1- leader 2- herd 3- hunter
4- roar 5- route 6- Mice

**4 Choose the correct answer:**

1- coldest 2- most dangerous
3- happiest 4- best 5- worst
6- biggest 7- kindest
8- the most powerful 9- easiest
10- most beautiful 11- more expensive
12- the most difficult 13- best
14- proudest 15- faster than
16- most dangerous

**5 Order the words:**

1- The elephants liked to swim in the lake.
2- The elephants could get out!
3- Many of the elephants didn't see the mice.
4- Thank you for listening and respecting our needs.
5- How did the mice help the elephants?

## Lesson (6)

**1 Supply the missing parts:**

1- hair 2- hobbies
3- photography 4- sports

**2 Read and complete the text:**

(1) profile (2) braces
(3) games (4) mall

**3 Choose the correct answer:**

1- into 2- sports 3- keen
4- favorite 5- wait 6- tell
7- photography 8- profile

**4 Order the words:**

1- I play volleyball at my local club.
2- It's easy for me to get home.
3- What do you do on the weekend?
4- I think a lot about the future.
5- I'd like to be a dentist.
6- What are your hobbies?
7- I can't wait to hear from you!
8- What are your future plans?

**5 Write a paragraph of (60) words:**

"My personal profile"

Hi! My name is Ahmed, and I'm 12 years old. I live in a beautiful house with my dad, mom, and little brother. I have short brown hair and wide eyes. I love playing football and drawing pictures of animals. My best friend is Ali, and we have so much fun together. We like going to the park and playing video games together. I'm a friendly and happy person, and I enjoy spending time with my family and friends.

## Lesson (7)

**1 Read and complete the text:**

(1) brain (2) walker
(3) decorated (4) exercise

**2 Order the words:**

1- How does Hana save the day?
2- Hana receives a new walker every year.
3- Hana's favorite color is green.
4- What is special about Hana?
5- Hana is a very helpful girl.
6- I think we should go to the park.
7- How old is your little boy?
8- Why is the woman worried?
9- The little boy was in danger.
10- I can't see my little boy!

## Unit (4) Test (4)

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer:**

1- six 2- green
3- braces 4- walk

**2 Listen and answer the questions:**

1- It's made of special bricks with plastic.
2- He wrote an educational comic about him. He portrayed David as a superhero who fights against bullying.

**3 Read and complete the text:**

1- photography 2- countryside
3- sports 4- movies

**4 Read the text and answer:**

(A) 1- a vase 2- street
(B) 3- They usually play football in the street and sometimes break windows.
4- He was at home having his lunch. After a while, he closed his eyes and fell asleep.

**6 Choose the correct answer:**
1- hunter 2- hand 3- advertisement
4- the coldest 5- hearing aid 6- if

**7 Order the words:**
1- Elephants roared very loudly in the forest.
2- What can people do with a walker?

**8 Write an email:**
From: mona@school.com
To: hana@gmail.com
Subject: A story I read in the library
Hi Hana,
I hope you're doing well! Guess what? Last week, I read the coolest story at the library. It was about a brave girl who went on an adventure to find a magical treasure. She had to solve puzzles and face scary monsters. It was so exciting! I couldn't put the book down. The ending was surprising too. I think you would love it! Let's go to the library together and find more amazing stories.
Take care,
Mona




## Revision on Unit 1

**1 Read and complete the text:**
1- happy 2- paints 3- relaxing
4- messy 5- clay

**2 Read and complete the text:**
1- art 2- sculpture
3- bubbles 4- irregular

**3 Read and complete the text:**
1- strong 2- Stainless steel
3- outdoor 4- reflects

**4 Read and complete the text:**
1-play 2- choir
3- photography 4- costume

**5 Read and complete the text:**
1- clay 2- wheel
3- apron 4- kiln

**6 Read and complete the text:**
1- shells 2- jewelry
3- bottles 4- sculptures

**7 Supply the missing parts:**
1- sculptor 2- Where
3- stainless steel 4- outdoor

**8 Supply the missing parts:**
1- pottery 2- clay
3- bowl 4- paint

**9 Supply the missing parts:**
1- club 2- animations
3- pictures 4- story

**10 Order the words:**
1- I used colored beads to make jewelry.
2- How do you like to express yourself?
3- What can you make with a cardboard box?
4- His favorite activity is making pottery.
5- A verse is a part of the poem.
6- There is a concert next week.
7-Mazen writes his own songs.
8- I'm going to make costumes for the choir.
9- He can't play any musical instrument.
10- The choir is going to sing beautiful songs.
11- Malak plays the guitar really well.
12- Nadine loves performing on stage.
13- A kiln is a hot oven for making pottery hard.
14- Do you like being a photographer?
15- How about designing your own clothes?
16- It's uncomfortable to have clay on my hands.

**11 Choose the correct answer:**
1- pottery 2- shells 3- beads
4- animation 5- junk modeling 6- mix
7- feel 8- musician 9- apron
10- editing 11- Costumes 12- concert
13- material 14- bubble 15- sunny
16- reflects 17- poet 18- clean
19- kiln 20- choir

**12 Choose the correct answer:**
1- wear 2- stay 3- is
4- finish 5- doesn't 6- feels
7- meets 8- walk 9- use
10- do 11- can

**13 Choose the correct answer:**

1- on 2- before 3- behind 4- after 5-through
6- on 7- after 8- in 9- for 10- into

**14 Write an email:**

From: sohaila@gmail.com
To: nadine@school.com
Subject: My school concert
Hi Nadine,
I couldn't wait to tell you about our school concert! It was incredible! I performed on the piano, my favorite musical instrument. I played beautiful music, and everyone loved it. I've been practicing my piano skills a lot, and I'm getting more confident. I can't wait for you to come over and hear me play. We can even play the piano together!
See you soon,
Sohaila

## Unit (1) Test (1)

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer:**

1- competitions 2- five and fifteen
3- museum 4- send

**2 Listen and answer the questions:**

1- It was yesterday.
2- They ate, drank and played games.

**3 Read and complete the text:**

1- express 2- activities
3- technology 4- animation

**4 Read the text and answer:**

1- enjoyable 2- English
3- It's spoken in different countries.
4- You will forget it.

**6 Choose the correct answer:**

1- bright 2- don't 3- watch
4- decorate 5- play 6- after

**7 Order the words:**

1- There was an advertisement for a photography exhibition.
2- You can use beads to make jewelry.

**8 Write an email:**

From: mona@gmail.com
To: jana@gmail.com
Subject: The play I watched
Hi Jana,
I need to tell you about the play I watched at the theater! It was so cool! The characters were funny and talented. The stage decorations were incredible, with colorful and bright colors. The costumes were amazing, too. I loved it because the story was full of adventures and made me laugh a lot. You should come with me next time!
Talk to you soon,
Mona

## Revision on Unit 2

**1 Read and complete the text:**

1- apartment 2- light
3- PC 4- cartoons

**2 Read and complete the text:**

1- blade 2- chops
3- motor 4- milkshakes

**3 Read and complete the text:**

1- outage 2- whiteboard
3- cable 4- electricity

**4 Read and complete the text:**

1- broke 2- blender
3- microwave 4- fix

**5 Read and complete the text:**

1- hang up 2- put out
3- tidy up 4- put away

**6 Read and complete the text:**

1- attention 2- stroke
3- chin 4- couch

**7 Read and complete the text:**

1- vacation 2- spare
3- memories 4- house

**8 Read and complete the text:**

1- party 2- presents 3- food
4- decorations 5- living room 6- house

**9 Supply the missing parts:**

1- put away 2- clean up 3- put out
3- pick up 4- hang up 6- mop up

**10 Supply the missing parts:**

1- look 2- from
3- metal 4- tidy up

**11 Supply the missing parts:**

1- florists 2- sunny
3- food 4- water

**12 Order the words:**

1- Seleem shares his room with his brother Maged.
2- I sometimes play the piano in my room.
3- Noha likes swapping comic books.
4- Kareem watches cartoons on TV.
5- Can you play the violin?
6- What is the blender made of?
7- A vaccine protects people from illness.
8- Omar is cleaning up the kitchen.
9- Your bedroom is very messy.
10- Turtles like to eat flowers and plants.
11- Cats have a lot of soft hair.
12- We had a power outage yesterday.
13- What do you use your blender for?
14- How should I clean my indoor plant?
15- Do you live in an apartment?

**13 Choose the correct answer:**

1- bedroom 2- swapping
3- watch cartoons 4- chess 5- sporty
6- chat 7- milkshake 8- vaccine
9- motor 10- power 11- interactive
12- microwave 13- change 14- tidy up
15- clothes 16- mop 17- brick
18- bicycle 19- claws 20- Turtles

**14 Choose the correct answer:**

1- This is 2- This means that
3- This is 4- have 5- up
6- boils 7- away 8- go
9- up 10- will 11- out
12- may 13- won't get 14- to
15- make 16- if 17- come
18- away 19- get 20- eats
21- doesn't come 22- won't feel

**15 Write a paragraph of (60) words:**
"Chores you help with at home"

I'm proud to help with different chores in the house! In the kitchen, I assist in preparing meals, washing dishes, and putting them away. In my room, I tidy up my toys and make my bed. I put out the garbage. I also help with washing clothes and then hanging them up. And when the floor has water on it, I mop it up. I enjoy being a helpful member of my family!

## Unit (2) Test (2)

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer:**

1- flowers 2- food 3- warm 4- dark

**2 Listen and answer the questions:**

1- They visited their grandparent's old house with their parents.
2- In a small hole in the wall.

**3 Read and complete the text:**

1- bricks 2- rooms
3- many 4- memories

**4 Read the text and answer:**

(A) 1- cats 2- quarter
(B) 3- She was cooking two chickens for lunch.
4- She was interested in having cats at home.

**6 Choose the correct answer:**

1- spare room 2- vet 3- clean up
4- will 5- have 6- may

**7 Order the words:**

1- I use the microwave for heating food.
2- Can you put away the dishes, please?

**8 Write a paragraph of (60) words:**
"Caring for your cats"

Taking care of my cats is so much fun! I make sure they eat their meals and always have fresh water to drink. I take them to the vet for check-ups and vaccinations to keep them healthy. I give them comfortable beds and provide scratching posts and toys to help them feel at home. They love to sleep and play, so I make sure they have plenty of rest and exercise. Caring for my furry friends brings me so much joy!

## Revision on Unit 3

**1 Read and complete the text:**

1- subjects 2- flexible
3- reindeer 4- boarding

**2 Read and complete the text:**

1- floods 2- panels
3- ICT 4- subjects

**3 Read and complete the text:**

1- music 2- instruments
3- drama 4- costumes

**4 Read and complete the text:**

1- cooking 2- recipe
3- swimming 4- competitions

**5 Read and complete the text:**
1- scribe 2- palace
3- busy 4- scripts

**6 Supply the missing parts:**
1- First 2- opinion
3- history 4- sum

**7 Order the words:**
1- Why are green roofs good for the environment?
2- Nomadic children help to look after reindeer.
3- Some children go away to boarding school.
4- Classrooms are not the same in every school.
5- I wear my school uniform every school day.
6- My brother's bedroom is sometimes messy.
7- Fares often goes swimming with his friends.
8- Playing tennis makes me feel healthy.
9- Cooking club always makes me hungry!
10- Sad plays make me unhappy!
11- Where do they eat lunch?
12- What is special about Green City School?
13- How long does it take to get to school?
14- There was a new metal bridge.
15- Students should do sports in schools every day.
16- Playing sports keeps you healthy.

**8 Choose the correct answer:**
1- city 2- calm
3- be away from their families 4- subject
5- reindeer 6- green roof 7- music
8- sled 9- panels 10- encourage
11- frames 12- steep
13- collapsed 14- opinion

**9 Choose the correct answer:**
1- always 2- lives 3- is always
4- never 5- go 6- usually has
7- meet 8- always eats 9- doesn't
10- sometimes walk 11- often go
12- make 13- Listening 14- me
15- makes 16- Swimming 17- me
18- makes 19- didn't 20- had collapsed
21- had heard 22- was 23- said
24- had seen 25- were building

**10 Write a paragraph of (60) words:**

"Going to school clubs is fun"

There are a lot of school clubs. Going to school clubs is fun. We go to the music club to sing and play musical instruments. We also go to the cooking club to make a meal. Food is always delicious! We can go to the swimming club. It makes us healthy and strong. If we go to the drama club, we can act in plays there.

## Unit (3) Test (3)

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer:**
(1) Sunday (2) home (3) 3 pm (4) ICT

**2 Listen and answer the questions:**
1- I will have a healthy body and new friends.
2- They go to the club every weekend.

**3 Read and complete the text:**
1- History 2- cultures
3- learn 4- changed

**4 Read the text and answer:**
1- friends 2- healthy
3- Mustafa plays football in a sports club.
4- Mustafa wants to be like Mohamed Salah when he grows up.

**6 Choose the correct answer:**
1- court 2- repaired 3- uniform
4- said 5- plays 6- makes

**7 Order the words:**
1- The boy tried to push the snake away.
2- We never go to school on Fridays.

**8 Write an email:**

From: mazen@hotmail.com
To: ahmed@gmail.com
Subject: School Open Day
Hi Ahmed ،
How are you and your family?
Last Monday, we had our School Open Day. The school invited the new students and their families. They had a tour of the school buildings. They saw our new Green Library. They also saw the nature trail around the playground, where we can learn about plants, animals, and insects.

They saw our small car park! It was a nice day.
See you soon،
Mazen

## Revision on Unit (4)

**1 Read and complete the text:**
1- built 2- movable
3- comic 4- disabilities

**2 Read and complete the text:**
1- problems 2- hearing
3- video 4- wear

**3 Read and complete the text:**
1- advertisement 2- bakery
3- website 4- information

**4 Supply the missing parts:**
1- shopping 2- birthday
3- present 4- opinion

**5 Order the words:**
1- People shouldn't be unkind to someone.
2- Shady is tall and wears glasses.
3- Injy wears braces to help her teeth get straight.
4- What sounds do you hear every day?
5- Where do people learn finger spelling?
6- What do you think about computer games?
7- I think cartoons are funny.
8- What do you think about playing football?
9- What do you look like?
10- I love listening to music.

**6 Choose the correct answer:**
1- mean 2- wheelchair 3- glasses
4- hearing aid 5- braces 6- curly
7- expensive 8- kindness 9- kind
10- into 11- walker 12- decorated
13- crawls 14- saves 15- into

**7 Choose the correct answer:**
1- advertisement 2- information
3- Kindness 4- if I knew 5- asked
6- if she knew 7- why I wanted
8- if I thought 9- had 10- what I knew
11- if she could 12- if Tarek liked
13- asked 14- if they knew 15- if I could
16- most powerful 17- most famous
18- most intelligent 19- tallest
20- smallest 21- most dangerous
22- highest 23- fastest 24- calmest

**8 Write a paragraph of (60) words:**
"How to help people with disabilities"
We should help people with disabilities. We should also look after them. People shouldn't be unkind to someone because they're different. We must show kindness to them. Kindness is important. Some people have problems hearing. We can communicate with them in sign language. Some people cannot walk. We can help them move their wheelchairs. We should all help each other. We are all equally important and special.

## Unit (4) Test (4)

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer:**
(1) different (2) short
(3) curly (4) Everyone

**2 Listen and answer the questions:**
1- Mr Kamal asked us what ways we communicate with each other.
2- Adam said that writing messages on his phone was his favorite way to communicate.

**3 Supply the missing parts:**
1- walker 2- glasses
3- braces 4- different

**4 Read the text and answer:**
1- kind 2- kindness
3- We must make sure that our behavior and actions do not harm others.
4- Your kindness.

**6 Choose the correct answer:**
1- leader 2- more 3- dentist
4- mall 5- where 6- the best

**7 Order the words:**
1- The tiger is faster than the elephant.
2- Braces help your teeth grow correctly.

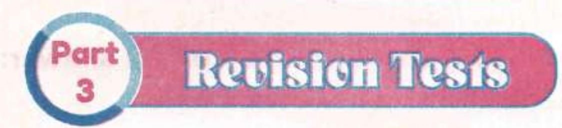
**8 Write an email:**
From: alaa@gmail.net
To: ramy@hotmail.com
Subject: How we are different
Hi Ramy,
I hope this email finds you well. I have a lot

of friends at school. Waleed is tall and wears glasses. He's very creative and likes drawing. Aya is very kind – she helps everybody. She has straight hair. She can't hear very well, so she wears a hearing aid. Amany loves drama and has curly, dark hair. She also loves reading and always has books in her hands. Khaled is very sporty, and he's in the wheelchair basketball team. Fawzy is great at math. He has short hair and wears braces. I have great friends. We are all different, but we love each other.

Tell me about your school friends.

Talk to you soon,

Alaa




## Revision Test (1)

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer:**

1- sculptor 2- India
3- stainless steel 4- strong

**2 Listen and answer the questions:**

1- Because our families are different.
2- No, they shouldn't.

**3 Read and complete the text:**

1- blender 2- appliance
3- smoothie 4- invented

**4 Read the text and answer:**

1- very tall building 2- English
3- They came from different countries all over the world.
4- She tidies her room and makes her bed. She often polishes her shoes, then she washes and puts on my school uniform, and she gets her books ready to begin a school day. She rides her bicycle to school.

**6 Choose the correct answer:**

1- clean 2- jewels 3- out
4- starts 5- herd 6- opinion

**7 Order the words:**

1- All children should learn Arabic at school.
2- What does the snake look like?

**8 Write a paragraph of (60) words:**
"My favorite musical instrument"

My favorite musical instrument is the guitar. I love the way it sounds, and I think it's a lot of fun to play. I love playing all kinds of music on the guitar. But my favorite thing to do is play at concerts. I've played in a few concerts at my school, and it's always a lot of fun to get up on stage and perform for people. I want to be able to play all of my favorite songs, and I want to be able to write my own music.

## Revision Test (2)

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer:**

1- Polish-American 2- bottom
3- motor 4- milkshakes

**2 Listen and answer the questions:**

1- A month ago.
2- Because she has a new bedroom.

**3 Supply the missing parts:**

1- sculptor 2- sculpture
3- steel 4- material

**4 Read the text and answer:**

1- stomach 2- friend
3- He's got a terrible pain in his stomach.
4- He saw a lot of sweets under his bed.

**6 Choose the correct answer:**

1- Photography 2- often walks 3- great
4- cafeteria 5- asked 6- for

**7 Order the words:**

1- What can you use to make a collage?
2- I always tidy up my room on weekends.

**8 Write an email:**

From: heba@gmail.net
To: asmaa@yahoo.com
Subject: The chores we do on the weekend
Hi Asmaa،
I hope this email finds you well! I wanted to tell you about the chores my family and I do every weekend.
First, we sweep the floor. Next, we hang up the clothes. My mom washes our clothes in the washing machine, and then

we hang them outside to dry. Then we hang them in the closet. After that, we clean up the kitchen. We wash the dishes and put them away. Then, we tidy up our rooms. We also have to put out the garbage.

I would love to hear about the chores you and your family do too!

See you soon,
Heba

## Revision Test (3)

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer:**

(1) safe (2) 15
(3) warm (4) Water

**2 Listen and answer the questions:**

1- She thinks electricity is most useful in our free time.
2- She plays video games with her brother Adel.

**3 Read and complete the text:**

1- interactive 2- disappeared
3- cable 4- socket

**4 Read the text and answer:**

1- wise 2- living
3- It refers to the old man.
4- The young man.

**6 Choose the correct answer:**

1- sculptor 2- go 3- air
4- never 5- after 6- uniform

**7 Order the words:**

1- There is going to be a concert next week.
2- How often should cats go to the vet?

**8 Write a paragraph of (60) words:**

"My favorite pet"

My favorite pet is my dog, Sparky. He is a small, brown dog with big ears and a furry tail. I love Sparky because he is always happy to see me, and he's my best friend. I chose a dog to be my pet because dogs are very loyal. I take care of Sparky by feeding him twice a day, walking him twice a day, and playing with him every day. I take it to the vet regularly. Sparky is the best pet a kid could ask for.

## Revision Test (4)

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer:**

1- flowers 2- soil
3- warm 4- safe

**2 Listen and answer the questions:**

1- A Bill robot works 24 hours a day.
2- The Bill robots do all humans' chores.

**3 Supply the missing parts:**

1- appliance 2- blender
3- invented 4- metal

**4 Read the text and answer:**

1- novels 2- Fawzi
3- He found out that when his friend said he knew the writer of the novel.
4- I have learned not to tell lies.

**6 Choose the correct answer:**

1- sculptor 2- up 3- timetable
4- that 5- electric 6- won't

**7 Order the words:**

1- Cats should go to the vet every year.
2- How do you communicate at school?

**8 Write an email:**

From: sama@hotmail.com
To: rana@gmail.com
Subject: My favorite school subjects, my friends and what I hope to be in the future

Hi Rana،

How are things with you?

My favorite school subjects are math and science. I love learning about how things work and solving problems. I also like reading and writing, but not as much as math and science. I have a lot of great friends at school. We play together at break, and we help each other with our homework. When I grow up, I want to be a scientist. I want to invent new things and make the world a better place. I think science is really cool, and I can't wait to learn more about it.

Tell me, what are your favorite school subjects? What do you want to be when you grow up?

See you soon,
Sama

## Revision Test (5)

### 1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
1- garden 2- top
3- city 4- environment

### 2 Listen and answer the questions:
1- It makes you healthy and happy!
2- I can play tennis in the club.

### 3 Read and complete the text:
1- stroke 2- claws
3- vet 4- vaccinations

### 4 Read the text and answer:
1- football 2- Swimming
3- There are some dangerous sports, like motor racing and parachuting.
4- The players have to practice hard to win.

### 6 Choose the correct answer:
1- appliance 2- they were 3- hunter
4- the coldest 5- keen 6- if

### 7 Order the words:
1- Why does Kapoor use stainless steel?
2- Green roofs are great for the environment.

### 8 Write a paragraph of (60) words:
"The robots"

In the future, I think robots will make our lives much easier. They will be able to do all of our chores, so we will have more time to do the things we love. For example, robots could clean our houses, cook our meals, and even walk our dogs. They could also help us with our homework and play games with us. I think it would be amazing to live in a world where robots do all the work for us.

## Revision Test (6)

### 1 Listen and circle the correct answer:
1- exciting 2- visiting
3- education 4- year

### 2 Listen and answer the questions:
1- My favorite activity is painting.
2- I always feel happy when I'm painting.

### 3 Read and complete the text:
1- appliances 2- need
3- the dark 4- games

### 4 Read the text and answer:
1- three 2- easy
3- Basim saves money to buy new books, he also borrows some books from his friends.
4- He always tells them that reading makes them think better.

### 6 Choose the correct answer:
1- find 2- comic books
3- vaccine 4- often cycles
5- best 6- why you were

### 7 Order the words:
1- I'm going to play the piano.
2- How old is your little boy?

### 8 Write an email:
From: ali@yahoo.com
To: saad@gmail.com
Subject: My personal profile
Hi Saad,
I hope this email finds you well. I'm your new friend Khaled, and I'm 13 years old. I live in a beautiful house with my dad, mom, and little sister. I have short black hair and wide eyes. I'm tall, and I love playing basketball. My best friend is Shady, and we have so much fun together. We like going to the park and playing basketball together. I'm a friendly person, and I enjoy spending time with my family and friends. Write me back and tell me about your personal profile.
Talk to you soon,
Ali